

Quantum Electrodynamics

Contents

1	Introduction	10
1.1	The Electromagnetic Field and the Photon	10
1.2	Review of Special Relativistic Notation	10
1.3	Maxwell's Equations	12
1.4	Transverse Gauge field	13
1.5	Blackbody Radiation, the Photoelectric Effect and the Compton Effect . .	15
1.5.1	Blackbody Radiation	15
1.5.2	The Photoelectric Effect	19
1.5.3	The Compton Effect	19
1.6	Photons	21
2	Dirac Spinors	23
2.1	Klein-Gordon Equation	23
2.1.1	Current density	24
2.2	Dirac's Equation	25
2.2.1	Energy-momentum relation for relativistic free particle	26
2.2.2	Continuity equation for the density	28
2.2.3	Lorentz covariance	29
2.3	Free Motion of a Dirac Particle	29
2.4	Positive and Negative Energy Eigenvectors	31

2.5	Helicity	32
2.6	Coupling of Dirac spinors to the Electromagnetic Field	33
2.7	Lorentz Transformations for Dirac Spinors	34
2.8	Infinitesimal Generating Technique for Lorentz Transformations	36
2.9	The \hat{S} Operator for Infinitesimal Lorentz Transformations	40
2.10	The \hat{S} Operator for Proper Lorentz Transformations	42
2.10.1	Example: Lorentz boost along x -axis	42
2.10.2	Example: Rotation around z -axis	42
2.10.3	Spinor for spatial rotations	43
2.11	The Four-Current Density	43
2.12	Plane Waves in Arbitrary Directions	43
2.13	Bilinear Covariants	48
2.13.1	Linear independence	48
2.13.2	Lorentz transformations	49
2.14	Properties of Free Solutions	52
2.14.1	The normalisation condition	53
2.14.2	The completeness relation	53
2.14.3	The closure relation	53
2.15	Projection Operators for Energy and Spin	54
2.15.1	Projection Operators for Energy	54
2.15.2	Projection Operators for Spin	55
2.15.3	Simultaneous Projection Operators for Energy and Spin	57
2.16	Summary	58
3	Perturbation Theory	61
3.1	Non-Relativistic Green's Function	61
3.1.1	Free Green's function in momentum space	61

3.1.2	Full Green's function in terms of plane waves	63
3.1.3	Perturbation theory	65
3.1.4	Boundary condition	66
3.1.5	The scattering matrix	66
3.2	The Electron and Positron Propagator	67
3.2.1	Differential equation for relativistic propagator	67
3.2.2	Non-interacting propagator in momentum space	69
3.2.3	Propagator describing positive-energy particle waves	70
3.2.4	Propagator describing negative-energy particle waves	70
3.3	Propagating Positive and Negative Particles	71
3.3.1	Free propagator in terms of plane waves	71
3.4	Perturbation Expansion for the Stuckelberg-Feynmann Propagator	73
3.4.1	Boundary condition of Feynman and Stuckelberg	74
3.5	The S -Matrix Elements	75
3.5.1	"Ordinary" scattering of electrons	78
3.5.2	Pair production processes	78
3.5.3	Pair annihilation processes	79
3.5.4	Scattering of positrons	80
4	Scattering of an Electron off a Coulomb Potential	81
4.1	The Scattering Amplitude	81
4.2	The Cross Section	83
4.3	Transition Probability Per Particle into Final States	84
4.4	Transition Probability Per Particle, Per Unit Time	85
4.5	Formula for Differential Cross Section	86
4.6	Averaging Over Spin	87
4.7	Taking the Trace of the Product of Gamma Matrices in the Differential Cross Section	88

4.8	Mott Scattering Formula	90
5	Scattering of an Electron off a Free Proton	91
5.1	Inhomogeneous Wave Equation and Photon Propogator	91
5.2	Potential of Proton Current	92
5.3	Conservation of Four-Momentum	93
5.4	Remarks on the Form of the S-matrix Element	94
5.5	The Scattering Cross Section	95
5.6	Lorentz Invariance	96
5.7	Averaging over Spin	98
5.8	Differential Cross Section in Rest Frame of Proton	100
6	Scattering of Identical Fermions	102
6.1	Averaging over Spin	103
7	Electron-Positron Scattering	105
7.1	Scattering of an Positron off a Coulomb Potential	105
7.2	Electron-Positron Scattering Amplitude	105
7.3	Remarks on the Form of the S -Matrix element	107
7.4	Crossing Symmetry	107
8	Scattering of Polarised Dirac Particles	108
8.1	Polarised Electron Scattering of a Coulomb Potential	110
8.2	When the Incoming Beam is Unpolarised	111
8.3	Polarised Scattering	112
9	Bremsstrahlung	116
9.1	Remarks on the Form of the S -Matrix element	119
9.2	Bremsstrahlung Cross Section	120

9.3	Sum Over Polarisation of Photon	120
9.4	The Infrared Catastrophe	122
10	Compton Scattering	123
10.1	Compton Scattering Cross Section	125
10.2	Annihilation of Particle and Antiparticle	126
10.3	Second Order Electron-Proton Scattering	127
10.4	Feynman Diagram in Momentum Space	129
10.5	Remarks on form of scattering Matrix	131
11	Feynmann Rules of QED	132
11.1	Scattering Amplitudes	132
11.2	Differential Cross Section	134
11.2.1	External static electromagnetic fields	135
12	Renormalisation	137
12.1	Divergent Feynmann Diagrams	137
12.2	Dimensional Regularisation	137
12.2.1	Feynmann Parameterisation	138
12.2.2	The d -Dimensional Integral	142
12.2.3	The Volume of a d -sphere via Gaussian Integration	146
12.2.4	The Γ Function	148
12.3	Renormalisation	149
12.4	Renormalisability of QED	149
12.4.1	Renormalisability to all orders	149

A	Appendix	150
A.1	Traces of Products of γ -Matrices	150
A.2	Complete Set of 4×4 Matrices	154
A.3	Linear independence	155
A.4	Expansion of 4×4	155
A.5	Unitary Equivalence of Representations of the Dirac Algebra	156
A.6	Coefficients of Infinitesimal Lorentz Transformation	162
A.7	Proof of Relation $\hat{S}^{-1} = \gamma_0 \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma_0$	163
A.8	Proof of the Completeness Relation for spinors	165
A.8.1	Proof of completeness relation: $\omega^{r\dagger}(\epsilon_r \mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\epsilon_{r'} \mathbf{p}) = \delta_{rr'}(E/m_0)$. . .	165
A.9	Integral representation for the step function	166
A.10	Averaging over Spin	168
A.11	Spin summation of the general squared matrix element	169
A.12	Proof of Equations (3.51) and (3.52)	170

List of Figures

3.1	nth-order Green's function as the probability amplitude for multiple scattering.	68
3.2	. . . . .	70
3.3	(a) $t < t'$: an electron propagated from x to x' . (b) $t > t'$: a positron propagated from x' to x	73
3.4	$\Psi_i(x)$ stands for the incoming wave, which either reduces at $y_0 \rightarrow -\infty$ to an incident positive energy wave $\psi_i(x)$ or at $y_0 \rightarrow +\infty$ to an incident negative energy wave $\psi_i(x)$. (a) ψ_f describes an electron in the limit $t \rightarrow +\infty$. (b) ψ_f describes a positron in the limit $t \rightarrow -\infty$	76
3.5	(a) electron scattering; (b) electron-positron pair creation; (c) pair annihilation (d) positron scattering.	77
3.6	The electron at x_1 propagates backward in time from x_1 to x_2 . Physically a positron-electron pair is created at x_2 , the positron propagates forward in time where it annihilates with the initial electron at x_1	78
3.7	. . . . .	80
3.8	Lowest order positron scattering. (a) incoming negative energy electron $\psi_i^{(-E)}$ is scattered into an outgoing negative energy electron $\psi_f^{(-E)}$. (b) This corresponds to an incident positron $\psi_f^{positron}$ and emerging positron $\psi_f^{positron}$. This is the link between the calculational technique and the real physical picture of positron scattering.	80
4.1	. . . . .	82
4.2	. . . . .	83
5.1	Lowest order electron-proton scattering.	94
5.2	. . . . .	95

6.1	.....	102
7.1	The incoming positron with momentum p_i and spin s_i is described by an outgoing electron with negative energy, with momentum $-p_i$ and spin $-s_i$. Similarly for the outgoing positron.	105
7.2	.....	106
7.3	(a) The initial state. (b) The final state.	106
7.4	(a) . (b) The exchange graph is usually written this way.	107
9.1	(a) . (b)	116
9.2	The two types of lowest order radiative corrections to elastic scattering of an electron of a Coulomb potential.	122
10.1	The direct and exchange diagrams describing Compton scattering.	124
10.2	Direct and exchange graph of pair annihilation into two photons.	127
10.3	.....	128
10.4	.....	129
10.5	.....	130
10.6	.....	131
11.1	We are considering reactions in which there are two particles in the initial state and n particles in the final state.	133
11.2	An electron entering an interaction.	133
11.3	An electron leaving an interaction.	134
11.4	.....	134
11.5	.....	135
11.6	Electron propagator.	135
11.7	Photon propagator.	136
11.8	Vertex	136
A.1	.....	167

Chapter 1

Introduction

An open problem in quantum gravity is to compute particle scattering amplitudes from the background-independent theory and recover the low energy physics.

Calculations should agree with low energy conventional field theory. Here we introduce conventional scattering theory.

Feynman derived his rules in a non-rigorous fashion but it still incorporated all QED processes. These rules were shown to follow from a systematic treatment within the framework of quantum field theory. In this appendix we follow the route taken by Feynman.

1.1 The Electromagnetic Field and the Photon

Light behaves as a wave as it demonstrates interference and diffraction. Maxwell's theory seemed to confirm the wave theory of light.

But then the development following the discovery of the photoelectric effect led to the realisation that sometimes light behaves like particles.

1.2 Review of Special Relativistic Notation

$$\eta_{\mu\nu} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1)$$

$$\eta^{\mu\nu} = (\eta^{-1})_{\mu\nu} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.2)$$

The world four vector

$$x^\mu = \{x^0, x^1, x^2, x^3\} = \{t, x, y, z\} \quad (1.3)$$

describes the spacetime coordinates. The covariant four vector is

$$x_\mu = \eta_{\mu\nu}x^\nu = \{t, -x, -y, -z\} = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3\} \quad (1.4)$$

We have

$$x \cdot x = x^\mu x_\mu \quad (1.5)$$

$$= t^2 - x^2 - y^2 - z^2. \quad (1.6)$$

The definition of four-momentum vector is analogous,

$$p^\mu = \{E, p_x, p_y, p_z\}, \quad (1.7)$$

and the scalar product $p_1 \cdot p_2$ is

$$p_1 \cdot p_2 = p_1^\mu p_{2\mu} = E_1 E_2 - \mathbf{p}_1 \cdot \mathbf{p}_2 \quad (1.8)$$

and the scalar product $x \cdot p$ is

$$x \cdot p = x^\mu p_\mu = x_\mu p^\mu = Et - \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{p}. \quad (1.9)$$

We use the general notions for four vectors

$$a = \{a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3\}. \quad (1.10)$$

We denote three-vectors by bold type as in

$$\mathbf{a} = \{a_1, a_2, a_3\}. \quad (1.11)$$

The components

$$a^\mu = \{a^0, a^1, a^2, a^3\}$$

1.3 Maxwell's Equations

Classical electromagnetism is described by Maxwell's equations. In the presence of a charge density $\rho(\mathbf{x}, t)$ and current density $\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{x}, t)$, the electric and magnetic fields \mathbf{E} and \mathbf{B} satisfy the equations

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \rho \quad (1.12)$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} \quad (1.13)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \quad (1.14)$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \quad (1.15)$$

From the second pair of Maxwell's equations follows the existence of scalar and vector $\phi(\mathbf{x}, t)$ and $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ potentials defined by

$$\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{E} = -\nabla \phi - \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} \quad (1.16)$$

These equations do not determine the potential uniquely, since for an arbitrary function $\Lambda(\mathbf{x}, t)$ the transformation

$$\phi \rightarrow \phi' = \phi + \frac{\partial \Lambda}{\partial t}, \quad \mathbf{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{A}' = \mathbf{A} - \nabla \Lambda \quad (1.17)$$

Expressed in terms of potentials the first Maxwell equation becomes

$$-\nabla^2 \phi - \frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}) = \rho - \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left(\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} \right) = \rho \quad (1.18)$$

For the second we need $\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{A})$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{A})]_i &= \epsilon_{ijk} \partial_j (\epsilon_{kj'k'} \partial_{j'} A_{k'}) \\
&= \epsilon_{ijk} \epsilon_{kj'j'} \partial_j \partial_{j'} A_{j'} \\
&= (\delta_{ii'} \delta_{jj'} - \delta_{ij'} \delta_{j'i'}) \partial_j \partial_{i'} A_{j'} \\
&= \partial_j \partial_{i'} A_{j'} - \nabla^2 A_i
\end{aligned} \tag{1.19}$$

$$\Box \mathbf{A} + \nabla \left(\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} \right) = \mathbf{j} \tag{1.20}$$

In four-vector notation the gauge transformations (1.17) read

$$A^\mu \rightarrow A^\mu + \partial^\mu \Lambda(x).$$

The first (1.18) and second (1.20) Maxwell equations can be combined into one equation

$$\Box A^\mu - \partial^\mu (\partial_\nu A^\nu) = j^\mu \tag{1.21}$$

1.4 Transverse Gauge field

It is always possible to find a function $\Lambda(x)$ such that the transformed potential satisfies the Lorentz gauge

$$\partial_\mu A^\mu = 0. \tag{1.22}$$

Only in this gauge does the wave equation have the simple form

$$\Box A^\mu = 0. \tag{1.23}$$

For

$$k^\mu k_\mu = 0 \tag{1.24}$$

its solutions are plane waves

$$A^\mu(x, k) = \epsilon^\mu N_k (e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}) \tag{1.25}$$

In the Lorentz gauge, we can make further gauge transformations $A^\mu \rightarrow A^\mu + \partial^\mu \Lambda(x)$ provided Λ satisfies

$$\square \Lambda(x) = 0.$$

Such regauging obviously does not change the Lorentz condition. The radiation gauge

$$A^0 = 0, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0. \quad (1.26)$$

can be chosen. To see this consider arbitrary $\mathbf{A}'(x)$, and postulate $\Lambda(x)$ such that

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}(x) = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}'(x) - \nabla^2 \Lambda(x) = 0 \quad (1.27)$$

We obviously need to solve the equation

$$-\nabla^2 \Lambda(x) = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}'(x) \quad (1.28)$$

Notice this is just the equation

$$-\nabla^2 \Lambda(x) = f(x) \quad (1.29)$$

which we know has the solution

$$\Lambda(x) = \int d^3 r' \frac{f(r')}{4\pi|r' - r|} \quad (1.30)$$

Therefore this gauge can always be chosen. In this gauge the timelike component of ϵ^μ vanishes. ϵ satisfies

$$\epsilon \cdot \mathbf{k} = 0 \quad (1.31)$$

and normalised such that

$$\epsilon \cdot \epsilon = 1 \quad (1.32)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon^\mu k_\mu &= 0 \\ \epsilon^\mu \epsilon_\mu &= -1 \end{aligned} \quad (1.33)$$

1.5 Blackbody Radiation, the Photoelectric Effect and the Compton Effect

$$E = hf \tag{1.34}$$

where f is the frequency and h is Planck's constant.

1.5.1 Blackbody Radiation

Boltzmann statistics for a gas of free particles is

$$p(\vec{v}) = Ne^{-E/kT}$$

Classical physics can be used to derive an equation which describes the intensity of the blackbody radiation as a function of frequency for a fixed temperature - the result is known as the Rayleigh-Jeans law. Although the Rayleigh-Jeans law works for low frequencies, it diverges as f^2 ; this divergence for high frequencies is called the ultraviolet catastrophe.

Planck's law states that

$$I(f, T) = \frac{2hf^3}{c^2} \frac{1}{e^{\frac{hf}{kT}} - 1} \tag{1.35}$$

We analyse using Bose-Einstein statistics: a "gas" of photons. There is no constraint on the number of photons. We find that for a system of photons, that the number of photons $n(\epsilon)d\epsilon$ in a (small) energy range ϵ to $\epsilon + d\epsilon$ is given by

Consider an energy level ϵ_i with degeneracy g_i , containing n_i bosons. This can be represented by $g_i - 1$ lines, and the bosons by n_i circles. The number of distinct orderings of lines and circles is

$$\frac{(n_i + g_i - 1)!}{n_i!(g_i - 1)!} \tag{1.36}$$

The total number of microstates for a given distribution is

$$\prod_i \frac{(n_i + g_i - 1)!}{n_i!(g_i - 1)!} \tag{1.37}$$

For $g_i \gg 1$ this can be replaced by

$$t(\{n_i\}) = \prod_i \frac{(n_i + g_i)!}{n_i! g_i!}. \quad (1.38)$$

If we assume that both g_i and n_i are large enough for Stirling's approximation to hold for $\ln g_i!$ and $\ln n_i!$, we find that $\ln t$ is given by

$$\ln t \approx \sum_i [(n_i + g_i) \ln(n_i + g_i) - g_i \ln g_i - n_i \ln n_i] dn_i \quad (1.39)$$

We want to maximise $\ln t$ subject to the constraint

$$\sum_i \epsilon_i n_i = U. \quad (1.40)$$

If $\ln t$ were maximal the change in $\ln t$ resulting from changes dn_i in each of the n_i 's would vanish:

$$d \ln t \approx \sum_i [\ln(n_i + g_i) - \ln n_i] dn_i = 0. \quad (1.41)$$

If all the dn_i 's were independent from each other, each coefficient in (1.41) would have to vanish. However because of the constraint (1.40) it no longer follows that all the dn_i 's are independent from each other as they have to satisfy

$$dU = \sum_i \epsilon_i dn_i = 0. \quad (1.42)$$

Adding this multiplied by the Lagrange multiplier β to (1.41) we obtain

$$\sum_i [\ln(n_i + g_i) - \ln n_i + \beta \epsilon_i] dn_i = 0 \quad (1.43)$$

which is a condition for a maximal value for $\ln t$ subject to the constraint (1.40). For appropriate value of β we can consider all dn_i independent from each other. Therefore, each coefficient must vanish separately:

$$\ln \left(\frac{n_i + g_i}{n_i} \right) + \beta \epsilon_i = 0. \quad (1.44)$$

We then find that the most probable distribution is

$$n_i = \frac{g_i}{e^{-\beta\epsilon_i} - 1}. \quad (1.45)$$

This is the Bose-Einstein distribution. β is related to the temperature, so the Bose-Einstein distribution takes the form.

$$n_i = \frac{g_i}{e^{\frac{\epsilon_i}{kT}} - 1}. \quad (1.46)$$

We consider a “gas” of photons.

$$n(\epsilon)d\epsilon = \frac{g(\epsilon)d\epsilon}{e^{\frac{\epsilon}{kT}} - 1} \quad (1.47)$$

where $g(\epsilon)$ are the density of states. We first derive the density of states as a function of the wavevector \vec{k} .

In order to determine the available wavevectors, we ask what standing waves can propagate within the box subject to boundary condition that the amplitude is zero at the boundaries. Using a cube with a side of length L , we see that there must be an integer number of half wavelengths in L for each of the directions. Hence if the vector is \vec{k} , with Cartesian components (k_x, k_y, k_z) , we must have

$$k_x = \frac{n_x\pi}{L}, \quad k_y = \frac{n_y\pi}{L}, \quad k_z = \frac{n_z\pi}{L} \quad (1.48)$$

where n_x, n_y and n_z are from the set of positive non-zero integers - these define “elementary cells”. The total number of states with wavenumber, $|\vec{k}|$, less than some value k is found by counting the number of triples (n_x, n_y, n_z) such that

$$\frac{\pi}{L}\sqrt{n_x^2 + n_y^2 + n_z^2} < k \quad (1.49)$$

We can find this by considering the octant of a sphere of radius k in \vec{k} -space. The volume of the sphere in \vec{k} -space is

$$\frac{4}{3}\pi k^3$$

and the volume of an elementary cell is

$$\left(\frac{\pi}{L}\right)^3$$

therefore the number of states satisfying (1.49) is $1/8$ the volume of the sphere divided by the volume of an elementary cell,

$$N(k) = \frac{1}{8} \frac{4}{3} \pi k^3 \left(\frac{L}{\pi} \right)^3 = \frac{1}{3} 4\pi \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} k^3$$

where V is the volume of the container. We must multiply this by a factor of 2 from the fact that there are two polarisations for the photons. Using $g(k) = 2 \times dN(k)/dk$ we obtain for waves in a box

$$g(k)dk = 2 \times 4\pi \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} k^2 dk. \quad (1.50)$$

Now we use the quantum relationship between photon energy and wave number:

$$\epsilon = hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = hc \frac{k}{2\pi} = \hbar ck. \quad (1.51)$$

$$g(\epsilon)d\epsilon = 8\pi \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{\epsilon^2}{(\hbar c)^3} d\epsilon \quad (1.52)$$

Thus, the number of photons $n(\epsilon)d\epsilon$ in the energy range from ϵ to $\epsilon + d\epsilon$ is

$$n(\epsilon)d\epsilon = \frac{8\pi V}{(hc)^3} \frac{\epsilon^2 d\epsilon}{e^{\frac{\epsilon}{kT}} - 1} \quad (1.53)$$

The energy $u(\epsilon)$ in the range ϵ and $\epsilon + d\epsilon$ is given by:

$$u(\epsilon)d\epsilon = n(\epsilon)\epsilon d\epsilon = \frac{8\pi V}{(hc)^3} \frac{\epsilon^3 d\epsilon}{e^{\frac{\epsilon}{kT}} - 1} \quad (1.54)$$

Since the energy and frequency are related by the quantum formula,

$$\epsilon = hf,$$

we find that the density is:

$$u(f)df = \frac{8\pi V h}{c^3} \frac{f^3 df}{e^{\frac{hf}{kT}} - 1} \quad (1.55)$$

The total energy, U . This is the area under the graph of the energy spectrum

$$U = \int_0^\infty u(f)df = \frac{8\pi V}{h^2 c^3} \int_0^\infty \frac{(hf)^3 df}{e^{\frac{hf}{kT}} - 1} \quad (1.56)$$

Define

$$y = \frac{hf}{kT}$$

in terms of which, the expression for the total energy becomes

$$U = \int_0^\infty u(f)df = \frac{8\pi V}{(hc)^3} (kT)^4 \int_0^\infty \frac{y^3 dy}{e^y - 1} \quad (1.57)$$

The integral is $\pi^4/15$, hence

$$\frac{U}{V} = \frac{8\pi^5}{15(hc)^3} (kT)^4. \quad (1.58)$$

1.5.2 The Photoelectric Effect

The photoelectric effect is the ejection of electrons from a metal surface exposed to electromagnetic radiation. The energy of the emitted electrons is given by the frequency of the irradiating light.

An increase in the intensity of the radiation leads to the emission of more electrons, but does not change their energy. This clearly contradicts the view of Maxwell's wave theory where the energy of a wave is given by its intensity.

There is no smaller quantity of energy in radiation of a certain frequency f than the energy of a single photon. The radiation is regarded as a stream of photons, each having an energy hf .

1.5.3 The Compton Effect

The successes of blackbody radiation and the photoelectric effect were not sufficient to convince all scientists of the idea that radiation is quantised. Further evidence for the photon concept came from the so-called Compton effect.

In 1923 Compton was studying the scattering of x-rays off graphite. Classically, the charges should oscillate at the same frequency as of the incoming radiation and then give off radiation of the same frequency. However he found that radiation was being emitted

at a longer wavelength. This is called the Compton effect. Specifically, if the incoming radiation is scattered by an angle θ and if λ and λ' are wavelengths of the incident and scattered radiation, respectively, we find that

$$\lambda' - \lambda = \frac{h}{m_0 c} (1 - \cos \theta). \quad (1.59)$$

where m_0 is the rest mass of the electron. Thomson scattering, the classical theory of an electromagnetic wave scattered by charged particles, cannot explain the results of the experiment and demonstrates that light cannot be explained purely as a wave phenomenon.

The photon idea provides a clear explanation and provides additional direct confirmation of the quantum nature of radiation. The results can be analyzed in terms of a collision between a photon and an electron (in the experiment the energy of the photon was very much larger than the binding energy of the electron and could therefore be considered as a free electron). The incident photon collides with an at rest electron, which then recoils as a result of the impact, the scattered photon has less energy, smaller frequency, and longer wavelength than the incident photon.

In fact we can derive (1.59) by a simple calculation. Classically we know from the equation $E^2 - c^2 p^2 = m_0^2 c^4$ that for a photon implies $p = E/c$. Since the energy of a photon is hf , its momentum is

$$p = \frac{hf}{c} = \frac{h}{\lambda}$$

Part of the energy of the radiation is transferred to the recoiling electron, we have

$$\frac{hc}{\lambda} = \frac{hc}{\lambda'} + E_{kin} \quad (1.60)$$

where λ' is the wavelength after scattering and $E_{kin} = (\gamma - 1)m_0 c^2$ is the relativistic kinematic energy of the recoiling electron. We consider the collision in the $x - y$ plane, where the incoming photon is scattered by an angle θ and the electron, initially at rest, is deflected by an angle ϕ . Conservation of momentum in the x and y directions respectively gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{h}{\lambda} &= \frac{h}{\lambda'} \cos \theta + p_e \cos \phi \\ 0 &= \frac{h}{\lambda'} \sin \theta - p_e \sin \phi \end{aligned} \quad (1.61)$$

where $p_e = mv = \gamma m_0 v$. By noting from (1.61) that

$$p_e^2 \sin^2 \phi^2 = \frac{h^2}{\lambda'^2} \sin^2 \theta, \quad p_e^2 \cos^2 \phi^2 = h^2 \left(\frac{1}{\lambda} - \frac{1}{\lambda'} \cos \theta \right)^2$$

and adding these together we can eliminate ϕ and after some manipulation obtain

$$p_e^2 = \frac{h^2}{\lambda^2} + \frac{h^2}{\lambda'^2} - \frac{2h^2}{\lambda\lambda'} \cos \theta.$$

We can obtain another expression for p_e^2 by using $E^2 = p_e^2 c^2 + m_0^2 c^4 = (E_{kin} + m_0 c^2)^2$ and (1.60)

$$\begin{aligned} p_e^2 &= \left(\frac{E_{kin}}{c} + m_0 c \right)^2 - m_0^2 c^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{h}{\lambda} - \frac{h}{\lambda'} + m_0 c \right)^2 - m_0^2 c^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{h}{\lambda} - \frac{h}{\lambda'} \right)^2 + 2 \left(\frac{h}{\lambda} - \frac{h}{\lambda'} \right) m_0 c. \end{aligned}$$

Equating these two expressions for p_e^2 we obtain after cancellation of terms

$$-\frac{2h^2}{\lambda\lambda'} \cos \theta = -\frac{2h^2}{\lambda\lambda'} + 2 \left(\frac{h}{\lambda} - \frac{h}{\lambda'} \right) m_0 c^2$$

which after simplifying gives the final result

$$\lambda' - \lambda = \frac{h}{m_0 c} (1 - \cos \theta).$$

the quantity $h/m_0 c = 2.43 \times 10^{-12} m$ is called the Compton wavelength. The wavelength shift $\lambda' - \lambda$ is at most twice the Compton wavelength (for $\theta = 180^\circ$).

1.6 Photons

The formula

$$E = hf$$

means that the energy E carried by a photon and the frequency of the photon's electromagnetic vibration are directly proportional, the constant of proportionality being Planck's constant, h .

We find the energy of the electromagnetic field of a plane wave

$$\vec{\epsilon} N_k() \quad (1.62)$$

by using

$$E_{photon} = \frac{1}{8\pi} \int d^3x \langle \mathbf{E}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2 \rangle = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int d^3x \langle \mathbf{B}^2 \rangle \quad (1.63)$$

and substituting in

$$\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A} = iN_k \mathbf{k} \times \epsilon (e^{-ik \cdot x} - e^{ik \cdot x}) = 2N_k \mathbf{k} \times \epsilon \sin(k \cdot x) \quad (1.64)$$

and using

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{k} \times \epsilon) \cdot (\mathbf{k} \times \epsilon) &= \epsilon \cdot \epsilon \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{k} - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \epsilon)^2 \\ &= (\epsilon_0^2 - \epsilon \cdot \epsilon) \mathbf{k}^2 - (k_0 \epsilon_0 - k \cdot \epsilon)^2 \\ &= \epsilon_0^2 \mathbf{k}^2 + \mathbf{k}^2 - k_0^2 \epsilon_0^2 \\ &= \mathbf{k}^2 = \omega^2. \end{aligned} \quad (1.65)$$

We find the energy to be

$$E_{photon} = \frac{4\omega^2}{4\pi} N_k^2 \int d^3x \langle \sin^2(\omega t - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) \rangle = \frac{2\omega^2}{4\pi} N_k^2 V \quad (1.66)$$

where V the volume of the box. The condition $E_{photon} = \hbar\omega$ (where $\omega = 2\pi f$ is the angular frequency and $\hbar = h/2\pi$) leads to the normalisation constant

$$N_k = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}}. \quad (1.67)$$

We write

$$A_\mu(x, k) = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}} \epsilon_\mu(k, \lambda) (e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}). \quad (1.68)$$

Chapter 2

Dirac Spinors

As a precursor to the Dirac equation, we introduce the Klein-Gordon equation which describes relativistic scalar particles.

2.1 Klein-Gordon Equation

From quantum mechanics we know about the correspondance between Schrodinger's equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} = \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_0} \nabla^2 + V(x) \right] \psi(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (2.1)$$

and the non-relativistic energy relation,

$$E = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m_0} + V(\mathbf{x}). \quad (2.2)$$

The former can be obtained from the latter via the substitutions

$$E \rightarrow \hat{E} = i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \quad (2.3)$$

$$\mathbf{p} \rightarrow \hat{\mathbf{p}} = -i\hbar \nabla. \quad (2.4)$$

Now consider the classical relativistic equation

$$E^2 = \mathbf{p}^2 + m_0^2, \quad (2.5)$$

Make the same substitutions as before (that is 2.4 and 2.4). In terms of these operators the Einstein relation between energy, momentum, and mass can be written as

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial t^2} = -\hbar^2 \nabla^2 \phi + m_0^2 \phi \quad (2.6)$$

2.1.1 Current density

Multiply Schrodinger's equation from the left by ψ^* and its conjugate by the left ψ then subtract. One obtains

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial |\psi|^2}{\partial t} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_0} [\psi^*(\mathbf{x}, t) \nabla^2 \psi(\mathbf{x}, t) - \psi(\mathbf{x}, t) \nabla^2 \psi^*(\mathbf{x}, t)] \quad (2.7)$$

This is the continuity equation in the form

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} = 0, \quad (2.8)$$

where

$$\rho = |\psi|^2 \quad (2.9)$$

is the probability density and

$$\mathbf{j} = -\frac{i\hbar}{2m_0} [\psi^*(\mathbf{x}, t) \nabla^2 \psi - \psi(\mathbf{x}, t) \nabla^2 \psi^*] \quad (2.10)$$

is the current density.

$$\int_V \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} d^3x = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_V \rho d^3x = - \int_V \nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} d^3x = \int_S \mathbf{j} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0. \quad (2.11)$$

Hence,

$$\int_V \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} d^3x = Const. \quad (2.12)$$

By similar reasoning (see section) obtain for the Klein-Gordon equation the four-current density

$$j_\mu = \frac{i\hbar}{2m_0}(\phi^*\nabla^\mu\phi - \phi\nabla^\mu\phi^*) \quad (2.13)$$

The probability density is

$$\rho = j_0 = \frac{i\hbar}{2m_0}(\phi^*\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial t} - \phi\frac{\partial\phi^*}{\partial t}) \quad (2.14)$$

At a given time both ϕ and $\partial\phi/\partial t$ may have arbitrary values and so ρ could be negative!

2.2 Dirac's Equation

Dirac wanted to construct a Hamiltonian that is linear in spatial derivatives, not just in time derivatives so that time and space are put of the same footing. He postulated an equation of the form

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial t} = [-i\hbar(\hat{\alpha}_1\frac{\partial}{\partial x^1} + \hat{\alpha}_2\frac{\partial}{\partial x^2} + \hat{\alpha}_3\frac{\partial}{\partial x^3}) + \hat{\beta}m_0]\psi \quad (2.15)$$

where $\hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta}$ are $N \times N$ matrices and ψ is a column vector

$$\begin{pmatrix} \psi_1(\mathbf{x}, t) \\ \psi_2(\mathbf{x}, t) \\ \vdots \\ \psi_N(\mathbf{x}, t) \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.16)$$

To find the concrete form of this equation we follow the natural requirements:

- Energy-momentum relation for relativistic free particle

$$E^2 = \mathbf{p}^2 + m_0^2, \quad (2.17)$$

- continuity equation for the density
- Lorentz covariance

2.2.1 Energy-momentum relation for relativistic free particle

Every component ψ_σ of the spinor must satisfy the Klein-gordon equation

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \psi_\sigma}{\partial t^2} = (-\hbar^2 \nabla^2 + m_0^2) \psi_\sigma \quad (2.18)$$

$$\begin{aligned} -\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial t^2} &= i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi) = i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \hat{\mathcal{H}} \psi = \hat{\mathcal{H}}^2 \psi \\ &= \left[-i\hbar \hat{\alpha}_i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \hat{\beta} m_0 \right] \left[-i\hbar \hat{\alpha}_j \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} + \hat{\beta} m_0 \right] \psi \\ &= -\hbar^2 \sum_{i,j=1}^3 \frac{\hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j + \hat{\alpha}_j \hat{\alpha}_i}{2} \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial x^i \partial x^j} - i\hbar m_0 \sum_{i=1}^3 (\hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\beta} + \hat{\beta} \hat{\alpha}_i) \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x^i} + \hat{\beta}^2 m_0^2 \psi \end{aligned} \quad (2.19)$$

Comparison with (2.18) implies the following requirements

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j + \hat{\alpha}_j \hat{\alpha}_i &= 2\delta_{ij} 1, \\ \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\beta} + \hat{\beta} \hat{\alpha}_i &= 0, \\ \hat{\alpha}_i^2 = \hat{\beta}^2 &= 1. \end{aligned} \quad (2.20)$$

For the Hamiltonian to be Hermitian, the matrices $\hat{\alpha}_i, \hat{\beta}$ have to be Hermitian

$$\hat{\alpha}_i^\dagger = \hat{\alpha}_i, \quad \hat{\beta}^\dagger = \hat{\beta}. \quad (2.21)$$

Therefore the eigenvalues are real. Since $\hat{\alpha}_i^2 = 1$ and $\hat{\beta}^2 = 1$, it follows that the eigenvalues can only take the values ± 1 . The eigenvalues are independent of the representation. Consider the diagonal representation of $\hat{\alpha}_i$, for example, we have

$$\hat{\alpha}_i = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & A_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & A_3 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \cdots & 0 & A_N \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.22)$$

with eigenvalues A_1, \dots, A_N , and $\hat{\alpha}_i^2 = 1$ yields

$$\hat{\alpha}_i^2 = I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \cdots & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_1^2 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & A_2^2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & A_3^2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \cdots & 0 & A_N^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.23)$$

from which

$$A_k^2 = 1, \quad i.e. \quad A_k = \pm 1. \quad (2.24)$$

Now from the anticommutation relations we have

$$\hat{\alpha}_i = -\hat{\beta}\hat{\alpha}_i\hat{\beta}$$

and the identity

$$Tr\hat{A}\hat{B} = Tr\hat{B}\hat{A}$$

we conclude

$$Tr\hat{\alpha}_i = -Tr\hat{\beta}\hat{\alpha}_i\hat{\beta} = -Tr\hat{\alpha}_i\hat{\beta}^2 = -Tr\hat{\alpha}_i = 0. \quad (2.25)$$

We see that the matrices $\hat{\alpha}_i, \hat{\beta}$ must even dimensional.

The smallest even dimension for which the (2.20) can be fulfilled is $N = 4$. In fact it is easily shown that the following is a representation

$$\hat{\alpha}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \hat{\alpha}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & 0 & i & 0 \\ 0 & -i & 0 & 0 \\ i & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\hat{\alpha}_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \hat{\beta} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.26)$$

To see this note that

$$\hat{\alpha}_i = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \\ \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.27)$$

where $\hat{\sigma}_i$ are Pauli's 2×2 matrices which satisfy the relation

$$\hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_j + \hat{\sigma}_j \hat{\sigma}_i = 2\delta_{ij} \mathbf{1}, \quad (2.28)$$

as this means

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j + \hat{\alpha}_j \hat{\alpha}_i &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \\ \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_j \\ \hat{\sigma}_j & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_j \\ \hat{\sigma}_j & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \\ \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_j & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_j \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\sigma}_j \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{\sigma}_j \hat{\sigma}_i \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_j + \hat{\sigma}_j \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_j + \hat{\sigma}_j \hat{\sigma}_i \end{pmatrix} \\ &= 2\delta_{ij} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{1} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathbf{1} \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.29)$$

and also

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\beta} + \hat{\beta} \hat{\alpha}_i &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \\ \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{1} & 0 \\ 0 & -\mathbf{1} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{1} & 0 \\ 0 & -\mathbf{1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \\ \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\hat{\sigma}_i \\ \hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma}_i \\ -\hat{\sigma}_i & 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (2.30)$$

2.2.2 Continuity equation for the density

We need to construct the four-current density and the equation of continuity. Let us multiply (2.15) from the left by $\psi^\dagger = (\psi_1^*, \psi_2^*, \psi_3^*, \psi_4^*)$

$$i\hbar \psi^\dagger \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi = -i\hbar \sum_{k=1}^3 \psi^\dagger \hat{\alpha}_k \frac{\partial}{\partial x^k} \psi + m_0 \psi^\dagger \hat{\beta} \psi \quad (2.31)$$

Take the Hermitian conjugate of (2.15)

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi^\dagger}{\partial t} = i\hbar \sum_{k=1}^3 \frac{\partial \psi^\dagger}{\partial x^k} \hat{\alpha}_k^\dagger + m_0 \psi^\dagger \hat{\beta}^\dagger \quad (2.32)$$

and multiply from the right by ψ , taking into account the Hermiticity of $\hat{\alpha}_i, \hat{\beta}$, we get

$$-i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi^\dagger}{\partial t} \psi = i\hbar \sum_{k=1}^3 \frac{\partial \psi^\dagger}{\partial x^k} \hat{\alpha}_k \psi + m_0 \psi^\dagger \hat{\beta} \psi \quad (2.33)$$

Then, subtraction of (2.33) from (2.31) yields

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\psi^\dagger \psi) = -i\hbar \sum_{k=1}^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^k} (\psi^\dagger \hat{\alpha}_k \psi) \quad (2.34)$$

which can be seen as

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} = 0, \quad (2.35)$$

where

$$\rho = \psi^\dagger \psi \quad (2.36)$$

is the positive definite density and

$$j^k = \psi^\dagger \hat{\alpha}^k \psi \quad (2.37)$$

We still have to show that $\rho(x)$ is the temporal component of a four-vector so that the spatial integral $\int \rho d^3x$ becomes constant in time. Only the probability interpretation of $\rho(x)$ ensured.

2.2.3 Lorentz covariance

2.3 Free Motion of a Dirac Particle

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} = \hat{\mathcal{H}} \psi = \left(\hat{\alpha} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} + m_0 \hat{\beta} \right) \psi \quad (2.38)$$

Stationary states can be found by substituting

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, t) = \psi(\mathbf{x}) \exp[-(i/\hbar)\epsilon t] \quad (2.39)$$

into the Dirac equation. We get

$$\epsilon\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \hat{\mathcal{H}}\psi(\mathbf{x}) \quad (2.40)$$

Split the four-component spinor into two two-component spinors ϕ and χ , i.e.

$$\psi = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1 \\ \psi_2 \\ \psi_3 \\ \psi_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \varphi \\ \chi \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.41)$$

$$\varphi = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1 \\ \psi_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \chi = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_3 \\ \psi_4 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.42)$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon\psi &= \hat{\alpha}\chi \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} + m_0\varphi \\ \epsilon\chi &= \hat{\alpha}\varphi \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} - m_0\chi \end{aligned} \quad (2.43)$$

The states

$$\begin{pmatrix} \varphi \\ \chi \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \varphi_0 \\ \chi_0 \end{pmatrix} \exp[(i/\hbar)\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{x}] \quad (2.44)$$

This results in

$$\begin{aligned} (\epsilon - m_0)I\varphi_0 - \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}\chi_0 &= 0, \\ -\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}\varphi_0 + (\epsilon + m_0)I\chi_0 &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (2.45)$$

This linear homogeneous system of equations for φ_0 and χ_0 has nontrivial solutions only in the case of a vanishing determinant of the coefficients, that is

$$\begin{vmatrix} (\epsilon - m_0)I & -\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} \\ -\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} & (\epsilon + m_0)I \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (2.46)$$

Using the relation

$$(\hat{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{A})(\hat{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}I + i\hat{\sigma} \cdot (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) \quad (2.47)$$

(2.46) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} (\epsilon^2 - m_0^2)I - (\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}})(\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}) &= (\epsilon^2 - m_0^2)I - \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{p}I - i\hat{\sigma} \cdot (\mathbf{p} \times \mathbf{p}) \\ &= (\epsilon^2 - m_0^2)I - \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{p}I = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (2.48)$$

or

$$\epsilon^2 = m_0^2 + \mathbf{p}^2 \quad (2.49)$$

from which it follows

$$\epsilon = \pm E_p, \quad E_p = \sqrt{\mathbf{p}^2 + m_0^2} \quad (2.50)$$

2.4 Positive and Negative Energy Eigenvectors

with solutions

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(t) &= \varphi(0)e^{-im_0t} \\ \chi(t) &= \chi(0)e^{-im_0t} \end{aligned} \quad (2.51)$$

φ represents a particle, while χ represents an antiparticle.

$$\chi_0 = \frac{(\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}})}{m_0 + \epsilon} \varphi_0. \quad (2.52)$$

Let us denote the two-spinor φ_0 in the form

$$\varphi_0 = U = \begin{pmatrix} U_1 \\ U_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.53)$$

with the normalisation

$$U^\dagger U = U_1^* U_1 + U_2^* U_2 = 1, \quad (2.54)$$

where U_1, U_2 are complex numbers.

2.5 Helicity

There is another quantum number, the helicity, can be used to classify the free one-particle states. Its operator should commute with the operators whose eigenvalues have already been introduced to label our free solutions.

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}} = \frac{\hbar}{2} \hat{\Sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\sigma} & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{\sigma} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.55)$$

The helicity commutes with the Hamiltonian

$$\begin{aligned} [\hat{\mathcal{H}}, \hat{\Sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}] &= [\hat{\alpha} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} + m_0 \hat{\beta}, \hat{\Sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}] \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} \\ \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} \\ \hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & (\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}})^2 \\ (\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}})^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 & (\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}})^2 \\ (\hat{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}})^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$[\hat{\mathcal{H}}, \hat{\Sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}] = 0 \quad (2.56)$$

and obviously we have

$$[\hat{\mathbf{p}}, \hat{\Sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}] = 0 \quad (2.57)$$

the helicity operator

$$\hat{\Lambda}_S = \frac{\hbar}{2} \hat{\Sigma} \cdot \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}}{|\mathbf{p}|} = \hat{\mathbf{S}} \cdot \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}}{|\mathbf{p}|} \quad (2.58)$$

Helicity is the projection of the spin onto the direction of momentum.

If the electron wave propagates into the direction of the z -axis, we have

$$\mathbf{p} = \{0, 0, p\}$$

and because of (2.58),

$$\hat{\Lambda}_S = \hat{S}_z = \frac{\hbar}{2} \hat{\Sigma} = \frac{\hbar}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.59)$$

with eigenvalues $\pm\hbar/2$. Clearly, the eigenvectors of $\hat{\Lambda}_S$ are

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ u_1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ u_1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.60)$$

with

$$u_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad u_{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.61)$$

If in any particular direction a quantum state take one of two values it is likely to do with spin half particles. In fact Lorentz-covariance of Dirac's equation will imply that these two-state systmes transform under rotations as two-spinors.

2.6 Coupling of Dirac spinors to the Electromagnetic Field

Under a gauge transformation the wavefunction $\psi(x)$ transforms as

$$\psi(x) \rightarrow e^{i\Lambda(x)}\psi(x) \quad (2.62)$$

and

$$A^\mu(x) \rightarrow A^\mu(x) - \frac{1}{e}\partial^\mu\Lambda(x) \quad (2.63)$$

thus

$$\left(i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} - eA^\mu \right) \quad (2.64)$$

is gauge covariant. The minimal coupling prescription

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} \rightarrow \left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} - eA^\mu \right) \quad (2.65)$$

results in the equation

$$(i\hbar \gamma^\mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} - eA_\mu \gamma^\mu - m_0)\psi = 0. \quad (2.66)$$

2.7 Lorentz Transformations for Dirac Spinors

How do we construct the wave function $\psi'(x')$ in one inertial frame if we know the wave function $\psi(x)$ in another frame, where the two frames are related by the Lorentz transformation a'_μ ? Here we construct the Lorentz transformation law between $\psi(x)$ and $\psi'(x')$.

We start from the principle of special relativity which states that the laws of physics should take the same form in all inertial systems, $\psi'(x')$ must be a solution of a Dirac equation which has the form

$$\left(i\hbar \gamma^{\mu'} \frac{\partial}{\partial x'^{\mu'}} - m_0 \right) \psi'(x') = 0 \quad (2.67)$$

in the primed system, where $\gamma^{\mu'}$ satisfy the same anti-commutation relations as γ^μ :

$$\gamma^{\mu'} \gamma^{\nu'} + \gamma^{\nu'} \gamma^{\mu'} = 2\eta^{\mu\nu} I \quad (2.68)$$

and

$$\gamma'^{0\dagger} = \gamma'^0 \quad (2.69)$$

$$\gamma'^{i\dagger} = -\gamma'^i \quad i = 1, 2, 3. \quad (2.70)$$

It can be shown that $\gamma^{\mu'}$ that satisfy the above relations are identical to γ^μ up to a unitary transformation \hat{U} , i.e.

$$\gamma^{\mu'} = \hat{U}^\dagger \gamma^\mu \hat{U}, \quad \hat{U}^\dagger = \hat{U}^{-1}. \quad (2.71)$$

Since unitary transformations do not change the physics, we may use the same γ matrices in both Lorentz systems. From now on we just take $\gamma^\mu = \gamma^{\mu'}$.

$$\left(i\hbar\gamma^\mu\frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} - m_0\right)\psi(x) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \left(i\hbar\gamma^\mu\frac{\partial}{\partial x'^\mu} - m_0\right)\psi'(x') = 0$$

Let \hat{a} denote the matrix of the Lorentz transformation a^ν_μ . We write

$$\psi'(x') = \psi'(\hat{a}x') = \hat{S}(\hat{a})\psi(x) = \hat{S}(\hat{a}^{-1}x') \quad (2.72)$$

We must have an inverse transformation

$$\psi(x) = \hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})\psi'(x') = \hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})\psi'(\hat{a}x)$$

Start with Dirac equation

$$\left(i\hbar\gamma^\mu\frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} - m_0\right)\psi(x) = 0$$

expressing $\psi(x)$ by $\hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})\psi'(x')$ yields

$$\left(i\hbar\gamma^\mu\hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})\frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} - m_0\hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})\right)\psi'(x') = 0.$$

We multiply by $\hat{S}(\hat{a})$

$$\left(i\hbar\hat{S}(\hat{a})\gamma^\mu\hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})\frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} - m_0\right)\psi'(x') = 0 \quad (2.73)$$

Now we transform $\partial/\partial x^\mu$ to x' coordinates is given by

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} = \frac{\partial x'^\nu}{\partial x^\mu} \frac{\partial}{\partial x'^\nu} = a^\nu_\mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x'^\nu} \quad (2.74)$$

So that () becomes

$$\left(i\hbar(\hat{S}(\hat{a})\gamma^\mu\hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})a^\nu_\mu)\frac{\partial}{\partial x'^\nu} - m_0\right)\psi'(x') = 0. \quad (2.75)$$

Comparing this to Dirac's equation in the x' coordinates we see that $\hat{S}(\hat{a})$ must satisfy

$$\hat{S}(\hat{a})\gamma^\mu\hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a})a^\nu_\mu = \gamma^\nu \quad (2.76)$$

or equivalently

$$\hat{S}(\hat{a})\gamma^\nu\hat{S}^{-1}(\hat{a}) = a_\mu{}^\nu\gamma^\mu \quad (2.77)$$

2.8 Infinitesimal Generating Technique for Lorentz Transformations

We first give the idea of the infinitesimal generating technique with a couple of simple examples.

Example 2: Lorentz transformation in x_1 -direction for $2d$ -spacetime

We derive the Lorentz transformation formula for boosts in the x_1 -direction. Consider two inertia frames, the ‘primed’ frame one moving away from the ‘unprimed’ frame at an infinitesimal velocity δv along the x_1 direction. For an infinitesimal relative velocity the spacetime transformation is Galilean:

$$x'_1 = x_1 - \delta vt. \quad (2.78)$$

How is special relativity brought into the calculation? This is done by requiring that

$$x_1^2 - t^2 = x_1'^2 - t'^2. \quad (2.79)$$

From this we see that $t' \neq t$, and so t should transform some way as well. Let us write

$$t' = t + a\delta vx_1. \quad (2.80)$$

Using this in (2.79) we find $a = -1$. The two transformation equations can be combined in the matrix equation

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} t' \\ x' \end{pmatrix} &= \left[\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \delta v \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \begin{pmatrix} t \\ x \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (\mathbf{1} + \delta v \hat{I}_2) \begin{pmatrix} t \\ x \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.81)$$

where $\hat{I}_x = -\mathbf{1}$. Now we repeat the transformation N times to generate a finite transformation with velocity parameter $\theta = N\delta v$. Then

$$\begin{pmatrix} t' \\ x' \end{pmatrix} = \left(\mathbf{1} + \frac{\theta}{N} \hat{I}_x \right)^N \begin{pmatrix} t \\ x \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.82)$$

In the limit $N \rightarrow \infty$,

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(\mathbf{1} + \frac{\theta}{N} \hat{I}_x \right)^N = \exp(\theta \hat{I}_x). \quad (2.83)$$

Noting $\hat{I}_x^2 = \mathbf{1}$, we expand the exponential

$$\begin{aligned} \exp(\theta \hat{I}_x) &= \mathbf{1} + \theta \hat{I}_x + \frac{\theta^2 \hat{I}_x^2}{2!} + \frac{\theta^3 \hat{I}_x^3}{3!} + \dots \\ &= \mathbf{1} \left[1 + \frac{1}{2!} \theta^2 + \dots \right] + \hat{I}_x \left[\theta - \frac{\theta^3}{3!} + \dots \right] \\ &= \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \cosh \theta & -\sinh \theta \\ -\sinh \theta & \cosh \theta \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.84)$$

$\cosh \theta$ and $\sinh \theta$ can be identified by considering the origin of the primed coordinate system, $x' = 0$, or $x = vt$. Substituting this into () we have

$$0 = x \cosh \theta - t \sinh \theta. \quad (2.85)$$

So

$$\tan \theta = v$$

Using $1 - \tanh^2 \theta = (\cosh^2 \theta)^{-1}$,

$$\cosh \theta = \frac{1}{(1 - v^2)^{1/2}}, \quad \sinh \theta = \frac{v}{(1 - v^2)^{1/2}}. \quad (2.86)$$

We finally obtain the known Lorentz transformations

$$t' = \frac{t - vx}{(1 - v^2)^{1/2}}, \quad x' = \frac{x - vt}{(1 - v^2)^{1/2}} \quad (2.87)$$

□

This result can easily be generalised to 4-minkowski space time. We just use the generator

$$I_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.88)$$

We end up with the answer

$$t' = \frac{t - vx}{(1 - v^2)^{1/2}}, \quad x' = \frac{x - vt}{(1 - v^2)^{1/2}}, \quad y' = y, \quad z' = z. \quad (2.89)$$

If we had wanted to do boost in the direction given by the unit vector

$$\vec{n} = (\cos \alpha, \cos \beta, \cos \gamma) \quad (2.90)$$

we would use the generator

$$I_n = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\cos \alpha & -\cos \beta & -\cos \gamma \\ -\cos \alpha & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\cos \beta & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\cos \gamma & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.91)$$

Note that, to first order, $t^2 - r^2 = (t')^2 - r'^2$ is satisfied for an infinitesimal relative velocity.

The reader is invited to do the full calculation and derive the Lorentz transformation formula.

Example 2: Rotations about the z -direction for $3d$ -spacetime

It is easily seen, drawing a diagram, that under an infinitesimal rotation $\delta\phi$ around the z -axis results in

$$x' = x + y\delta\phi, \quad y' = y - x\delta\phi \quad (2.92)$$

The two transformation equations can be combined in the matrix equation

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \left[\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \delta\phi \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (\mathbf{1} + \delta\phi i\hat{\sigma}_2) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.93)$$

where $\hat{\sigma}_2$ is a Pauli matrix. Let us now do the exponentiation using $\hat{\sigma}_2^2 = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\exp(\phi i \hat{\sigma}_2) &= \mathbf{1} + \phi i \hat{\sigma}_2 - \frac{\phi^2}{2!} \hat{\sigma}_2^2 - i \frac{\phi^3}{3!} \hat{\sigma}_2^3 \\
&= \mathbf{1} \left(1 - \frac{\phi^2}{2!} + \dots\right) + i \hat{\sigma}_2 \left(\phi - \frac{\phi^3}{3!} + \dots\right) \\
&= \mathbf{1} \cos \phi + i \hat{\sigma}_2 \sin \phi \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi & \sin \phi \\ -\sin \phi & \cos \phi \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned} \tag{2.94}$$

So that

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi & \sin \phi \\ -\sin \phi & \cos \phi \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.95}$$

□

In 4d-minkowski space time we use the generator

$$I_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.96}$$

We end up with the answer

$$t' = t, \quad x' = x \cos \phi + y \sin \phi, \quad y' = -x \sin \phi + y \cos \phi, \quad z' = z. \tag{2.97}$$

Proper Lorentz Transformations

$$a^\nu{}_\mu = \delta^\nu{}_\mu + \Delta\omega^\nu{}_\mu \tag{2.98}$$

We denote the inverse Lorentz Transformation as $a_\nu{}^\sigma$. Then, neglecting terms quadratic in $\Delta\omega$,

$$\begin{aligned}
a^\mu{}_\nu a_\mu{}^\sigma &= \delta_\nu^\sigma = (\delta_\nu^\mu + \Delta\omega^\mu{}_\nu)(\delta_\mu^\sigma + \Delta\omega_\mu{}^\sigma) \\
&\approx \delta_\nu^\mu \delta_\mu^\sigma + \delta_\nu^\mu \Delta\omega_\mu{}^\sigma + \delta_\mu^\sigma \Delta\omega^\mu{}_\nu \\
&= \delta_\nu^\sigma + \Delta\omega_\nu{}^\sigma + \Delta\omega^\sigma{}_\nu
\end{aligned} \tag{2.99}$$

Hence,

$$\Delta\omega_{\nu}{}^{\sigma} + \Delta\omega^{\sigma}{}_{\nu} = 0$$

or

$$\eta^{\mu\nu} (\Delta\omega_{\nu}{}^{\sigma} + \Delta\omega^{\sigma}{}_{\nu}) = 0 = \Delta\omega^{\mu\sigma} + \Delta\omega^{\sigma\mu}.$$

so we must have

$$\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu} = -\Delta\omega^{\nu\mu} \tag{2.100}$$

Consequently, there are six independent non-vanishing parameters $\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu}$.

2.9 The \hat{S} Operator for Infinitesimal Lorentz Transformations

We aim to determine the operator \hat{S} by ascertaining its infinitesimal form by finding its expansion to linear order in the generators $\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu}$. We write

$$\hat{S}(\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu}) = \mathbf{1} - \frac{i}{4} \hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu} \Delta\omega^{\mu\nu} \tag{2.101}$$

where $\sigma_{\alpha\beta} = -\sigma_{\beta\alpha}$. The inverse operator being

$$\hat{S}^{-1}(\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu}) = \mathbf{1} + \frac{i}{4} \hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu} \Delta\omega^{\mu\nu} \tag{2.102}$$

By finding $\sigma_{\alpha\beta}$ we can find \hat{S} . By substituting (2.101) and (2.102) into the defining equation for \hat{S} :

$$(\delta_{\mu}^{\nu} + \Delta\omega_{\mu}{}^{\nu})\gamma^{\mu} = \hat{S}(\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu})\gamma^{\nu}\hat{S}^{-1}(\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu})$$

we can find an equation that determines $\sigma_{\alpha\beta}$.

$$(\delta_\mu^\nu + \Delta\omega_\mu^\nu)\gamma^\mu = \left(\mathbf{1} - \frac{i}{4}\hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta}\Delta\omega^{\alpha\beta}\right)\gamma^\nu \left(\mathbf{1} + \frac{i}{4}\hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta}\Delta\omega^{\alpha\beta}\right)$$

or omitting the quadratic terms in $\Delta\omega_\mu^\nu$,

$$\Delta\omega_\mu^\nu\gamma^\mu = -\frac{i}{4}\Delta\omega^{\alpha\beta}(\hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta}\gamma^\nu - \gamma^\nu\hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta}) \quad (2.103)$$

Using the antisymmetry of $\Delta\omega_\mu^\nu$, the LHS becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta\omega_\mu^\nu\gamma^\mu &= \eta^\nu_\sigma\Delta\omega_\mu^\sigma\gamma^\mu \\ &= \Delta\omega_\beta^\alpha(\eta^\nu_\alpha\gamma^\beta) \\ &= -\Delta\omega^{\alpha\beta}(\eta^\nu_\alpha\gamma_\beta) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\omega^{\alpha\beta}(\eta^\nu_\alpha\gamma_\beta - \eta^\nu_\beta\gamma_\alpha) \end{aligned} \quad (2.104)$$

Comparing this with (2.103), we end up with the relation

$$-2i(\eta_\nu^\alpha\gamma_\beta - \eta_\nu^\beta\gamma_\alpha) = [\hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta}, \gamma^\nu] \quad (2.105)$$

It is shown in section A.6 that this is solved by

$$\hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{i}{2}[\gamma_\alpha, \gamma_\beta].$$

The operator $\hat{S}(\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu})$ is now

$$\hat{S}(\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu}) = \mathbf{1} + \frac{1}{8}[\gamma_\mu, \gamma_\nu]\Delta\omega^{\mu\nu} \quad (2.106)$$

The problem of finding \hat{S} for finite proper Lorentz transformations has now been essentially solved! To construct \hat{S} we now successively apply the infinitesimal operators (2.106). In order to do this we write

$$\Delta\omega_\mu^\nu = \Delta\omega(\hat{I}_\mathbf{n})^\nu_\mu \quad (2.107)$$

Here $\Delta\omega$ is an infinitesimal parameter of the Lorentz group around an axis in the \mathbf{n} direction.

2.10 The \hat{S} Operator for Proper Lorentz Transformations

$$\begin{aligned}\psi'(x') = \hat{S}(\hat{a})\psi(x) &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(\mathbf{1} - \frac{i}{4N} \hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu} (\hat{I}_{\mathbf{n}})^{\mu\nu} \right)^N \psi(x) \\ &= e^{-(i/4)\omega \hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu} (\hat{I}_{\mathbf{n}})^{\mu\nu}} \psi(x)\end{aligned}\tag{2.108}$$

2.10.1 Example: Lorentz boost along x -axis

$$(I_x)^0_1 = (I_x)^1_0 = -(I_x)^{01} = +(I_x)^{10} = -1.$$

So (2.108) becomes

$$\begin{aligned}\psi'(x') &= \exp \left\{ -\frac{i}{4} \omega [\hat{\sigma}_{01} (I_x)^{01} + \hat{\sigma}_{10} (I_x)^{10}] \right\} \psi(x) \\ &= \exp \left\{ -\frac{i}{4} \omega [\hat{\sigma}_{01} (+1) + \hat{\sigma}_{10} (-1)] \right\} \psi(x) \\ &= \exp \left\{ -\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right\} \psi(x)\end{aligned}\tag{2.109}$$

□

2.10.2 Example: Rotation around z -axis

Recall that

$$\Delta\omega^\nu{}_\mu = \delta\phi (\hat{I}_3)^\nu{}_\mu,\tag{2.110}$$

where \hat{I}_3 is given by (). Thus only the elements $(\hat{I}_3)^{12} = -(\hat{I}_3)^{21}$ are non-zero, and we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi'(x') &= \exp \left\{ -\frac{i}{4} \phi \hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu} (\hat{I}_3)^{\mu\nu} \right\} \psi(x) \\
&= \exp \left\{ -\frac{i}{4} \phi [\hat{\sigma}_{12} (I_x)^{12} + \hat{\sigma}_{21} (I_3)^{21}] \right\} \psi(x) \\
&= \exp \left\{ -\frac{i}{4} \phi [\hat{\sigma}_{12} (-1) + \hat{\sigma}_{21} (+1)] \right\} \psi(x) \\
&= \exp \left\{ \frac{i}{2} \phi \hat{\sigma}_{12} \right\} \psi(x) = \exp \left\{ \frac{i}{2} \phi \hat{\sigma}^{12} \right\} \psi(x)
\end{aligned} \tag{2.111}$$

□

2.10.3 Spinor for spatial rotations

2.11 The Four-Current Density

$$j^\mu(x) = \psi^\dagger(x) \gamma^0 \gamma^\mu \psi(x). \tag{2.112}$$

This current density transforms under the Lorentz transformation as

$$\begin{aligned}
j'^\mu(x') &= \psi'^\dagger(x') \gamma^0 \gamma^\mu \psi'(x') \\
&= \psi^\dagger(x) \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma^0 \gamma^\mu \hat{S} \psi(x) \\
&= \psi^\dagger(x) \gamma^0 (\gamma^0 \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma^0) \gamma^\mu \hat{S} \psi(x) \\
&= \psi^\dagger(x) \gamma^0 \hat{S}^{-1} \gamma^\mu \hat{S} \psi(x) \\
&= \psi^\dagger(x) \gamma^0 (a^\mu{}_\nu \gamma^\nu) \psi(x) \\
&= a^\mu{}_\nu j^\nu(x)
\end{aligned} \tag{2.113}$$

and as such is identified as a four-vector.

2.12 Plane Waves in Arbitrary Directions

Free solutions have the form

$$\psi^r = \omega^r(0) e^{-\epsilon_r (m_0/\hbar)t} \tag{2.114}$$

We have

$$\omega^1(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \omega^2(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \omega^3(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \omega^4(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.115)$$

$$\omega^r(p) = \hat{S}(-\mathbf{v})\omega^r(0) = e^{-(\omega/2)\alpha \cdot \mathbf{v}/v}\omega^r(0) \quad (2.116)$$

$$\hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu}(\hat{I}_{\mathbf{n}})^{\mu\nu} = 2(\hat{\sigma}_{01}(\hat{I}_{\mathbf{n}})^{01} + (\hat{I}_{\mathbf{n}})^{02} + (\hat{I}_{\mathbf{n}})^{03}) \quad (2.117)$$

$$\frac{\mathbf{v}}{v} = (\cos \alpha, \cos \beta, \cos \gamma) \quad (2.118)$$

Also

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\sigma}_{0i} &= \frac{i}{2}(\gamma_0\gamma_i - \gamma_i\gamma_0) \\ &= i\gamma_0\gamma_i \\ &= -i\gamma^0\gamma^i = -i\gamma^0\gamma^0\alpha_i = -i\alpha_i \end{aligned} \quad (2.119)$$

With this the spinor transformation for Lorentz transformations to interial systems with direction of velocity \mathbf{v}/v now becomes

$$\hat{S}(-\mathbf{v}) = \hat{S}\left(-\frac{\mathbf{P}}{E}\right) = e^{-(\omega/2)\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v}/v} \quad (2.120)$$

When we expand \hat{S} we will need the following

$$\begin{aligned} (\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v})^2 &= \hat{\alpha}^i \hat{\alpha}^j v_i v_j \\ &= \gamma^0 \gamma^i \gamma^0 \gamma^j v_i v_j \\ &= -\gamma^i \gamma^j v_i v_j \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}(\gamma^i \gamma^j + \gamma^j \gamma^i) v_i v_j \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} 2\eta^{ij} \mathbf{1} v_i v_j = +v^2 \mathbf{1} \end{aligned} \quad (2.121)$$

We expand \hat{S}

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{S}(-\mathbf{v}) &= \mathbf{1} - \frac{\omega}{2} \frac{\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{v} + \frac{1}{2!} \frac{\omega^2}{4v^2} (\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v})^2 - \frac{1}{3!} \frac{\omega^3}{8v^3} (\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v})^3 + \dots \\
&= \mathbf{1} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\omega^2}{4}\right) - \frac{\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{v} \left(\frac{\omega}{2} + \dots\right) \\
&= \mathbf{1} \cosh \frac{\omega}{2} - \frac{\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{v} \sinh \frac{\omega}{2}
\end{aligned} \tag{2.122}$$

The matrix written out $\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v}/v$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\hat{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{v} &= \hat{\alpha}_x \frac{v_x}{v} + \hat{\alpha}_y \frac{v_y}{v} + \hat{\alpha}_z \frac{v_z}{v} \\
&= \frac{p_x}{p} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{ip_y}{p} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
&\quad + \frac{p_z}{p} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{p} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & p_z & p_- \\ 0 & 0 & p_+ & -p_z \\ p_z & p_- & 0 & 0 \\ p_+ & -p_z & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned} \tag{2.123}$$

where $p_{\pm} = p_x \pm ip_y$. We obtain

$$\hat{S}(-\mathbf{v}) = \cosh \frac{\omega}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} - \cosh \frac{\omega}{2} \frac{\tanh \frac{\omega}{2}}{p} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & p_z & p_- \\ 0 & 0 & p_+ & -p_z \\ p_z & p_- & 0 & 0 \\ p_+ & -p_z & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.124}$$

To find expressions for $\cosh \frac{\omega}{2}$ and $\tanh \frac{\omega}{2}$ we consider only motion in the x direction. We convert the rotation angle ω with the aid of

$$-v_x = \tanh \omega, \tag{2.125}$$

or

$$\omega = \tanh^{-1}(-v_x) = -\tanh^{-1}(v_x) \quad (2.126)$$

We need the equations

$$\begin{aligned} \cosh \frac{\omega}{2} \sinh \frac{\omega}{2} &= \frac{1}{2} \sinh \omega, \\ \cosh \frac{\omega}{2} \cosh \frac{\omega}{2} &= \frac{1}{2} (\cosh \omega + 1), \\ \sinh \frac{\omega}{2} \sinh \frac{\omega}{2} &= \frac{1}{2} (\cosh \omega - 1). \end{aligned} \quad (2.127)$$

Therefore

$$\tanh \frac{x}{2} = \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x + 1} = \frac{\tanh x}{1 + 1/\cosh x} = \frac{\tanh x}{1 + \sqrt{1 - \tanh^2 x}} \quad (2.128)$$

With (2.126)

$$\begin{aligned} -\tanh \frac{\omega}{2} &= \frac{-\tanh \omega}{1 + \sqrt{1 - \tanh^2 \omega}} \\ &= \frac{v_x}{1 + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2}} \\ &= \frac{m_0/\sqrt{1 - v_x^2}}{m_0/\sqrt{1 - v_x^2} + 1} \frac{v_x}{1 + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2}} \\ &= \frac{p_x}{E + m_0} \end{aligned} \quad (2.129)$$

taking into account that we are considering only motion in the x direction, we may write

$$-\tanh \frac{\omega}{2} = \frac{p}{E + m_0}. \quad (2.130)$$

And

$$\begin{aligned}
\cosh \frac{\omega}{2} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \tanh \frac{\omega}{2}}} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - [\tanh \omega / (1 + \sqrt{1 - \tanh^2 \omega})^2]}} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - [v_x / (1 + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2})^2]}} \\
&= \frac{1 + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2}}{\sqrt{(1 + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2})^2 + v_x^2}} \\
&= \frac{1 + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2}}{\sqrt{(1 + 2\sqrt{1 - v_x^2} + 1 - v_x^2) - v_x^2}} \\
&= \frac{1 + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2}}{\sqrt{2}\sqrt{1 - v_x^2} + \sqrt{1 - v_x^2}} \\
&= \frac{[1/\sqrt{1 - v_x^2} + 1]m_0}{\sqrt{1 + [1/\sqrt{1 - v_x^2}]\sqrt{2}m_0}} \\
&= \frac{E + m_0}{\sqrt{m_0 + E}\sqrt{2m_0}} \\
&= \sqrt{\frac{E + m_0}{2m_0}}
\end{aligned} \tag{2.131}$$

substituting this result and(2.130) into (2.124) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{S}(-\mathbf{v}) &= \sqrt{\frac{E + m_0}{2m_0}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{p_z}{E+m_0} & \frac{p_-}{E+m_0} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{p_+}{E+m_0} & \frac{-p_z}{E+m_0} \\ \frac{p_z}{E+m_0} & \frac{p_-}{E+m_0} & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{p_+}{E+m_0} & \frac{-p_z}{E+m_0} & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= [\omega^1(\mathbf{p}), \omega^2(\mathbf{p}), \omega^3(\mathbf{p}), \omega^4(\mathbf{p})].
\end{aligned} \tag{2.132}$$

2.13 Bilinear Covariants

2.13.1 Linear independence

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{\Gamma}^S &= \mathbf{I}, & \hat{\Gamma}_\mu^V &= \gamma_\mu, & \hat{\Gamma}_{\mu\nu}^T &= \hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu} = -\hat{\sigma}_{\nu\mu} \\ \hat{\Gamma}^P &= i\gamma^0\gamma^1\gamma^2\gamma^3 \equiv \gamma^5, & \hat{\Gamma}_\mu^a &= \gamma^5\gamma_\mu\end{aligned}\tag{2.133}$$

i) $(\hat{\Gamma}^n)^2 = \pm\mathbf{I}$.

Proof: Proved explicitly.

ii) To each $\hat{\Gamma}^n$ except $\hat{\Gamma}^S$ there exists at least one $\hat{\Gamma}^m$ such that

$$\hat{\Gamma}^n\hat{\Gamma}^m = -\hat{\Gamma}^m\hat{\Gamma}^n\tag{2.134}$$

Proof: Proved explicitly.

iii) $Tr(\hat{\Gamma}^n) = 0$

By (2.134)

$$-\hat{\Gamma}^m\hat{\Gamma}^n\hat{\Gamma}^m = +\hat{\Gamma}^n(\hat{\Gamma}^m)^2$$

As $(\hat{\Gamma}^m)^2 = \pm\mathbf{I}$

$$\pm Tr(\hat{\Gamma}^n) = Tr(\hat{\Gamma}^n(\hat{\Gamma}^m)^2) = -Tr(\hat{\Gamma}^m\hat{\Gamma}^n\hat{\Gamma}^m) = -Tr(\hat{\Gamma}^n\hat{\Gamma}^m\hat{\Gamma}^m) = 0.$$

iv) For given $\hat{\Gamma}^a$ and $\hat{\Gamma}^b$ ($a \neq b$) there exists a $\hat{\Gamma}^n \neq \hat{\Gamma}^S$ such that

$$\hat{\Gamma}^a\hat{\Gamma}^b = f_{ab}^n\hat{\Gamma}^n.\tag{2.135}$$

Proof: Proved explicitly.

v) The $\hat{\Gamma}^n$ are linearly independent. Suppose

$$\sum_n a_n \hat{\Gamma}^n = 0.\tag{2.136}$$

Multiply from the right by $\hat{\Gamma}^m \neq \hat{\Gamma}^S$ we get

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \sum_n a_n \text{Tr}(\hat{\Gamma}^n \hat{\Gamma}^m) \\
&= a_m (\hat{\Gamma}^m)^2 + \sum_{n \neq m} a_n \text{Tr}(\hat{\Gamma}^n \hat{\Gamma}^m) \\
&= a_m (\hat{\Gamma}^m)^2 + \sum_{n \neq m} a_n \text{Tr}(f_{nm}^\nu \hat{\Gamma}^\nu) \\
&= \pm 4a_m.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.137}$$

Thus $a_m = 0$ for all $m \neq S$. Now in the case of $\hat{\Gamma}^m = \hat{\Gamma}^S$

$$0 = \text{Tr} \left(\sum_n a_n \hat{\Gamma}^S \hat{\Gamma}^n \right) = a_S \text{Tr}(\mathbf{I}) + \sum_{n \neq S} a_n \text{Tr}(\hat{\Gamma}^n) = 0, \tag{2.138}$$

i.e. $a_S = 0$.

□

2.13.2 Lorentz transformations

Under Lorentz transformations

$$\psi \rightarrow \hat{S}\psi, \quad \bar{\psi} \rightarrow \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1} \tag{2.139}$$

This is proved by

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{\psi}'(x') &= \psi'^{\dagger}(x')\gamma^0 \\
&= \psi^{\dagger}(x)\hat{S}^{\dagger}\gamma^0 \\
&= \psi^{\dagger}(x)\gamma^0(\gamma^0\hat{S}^{\dagger}\gamma^0) \\
&= \bar{\psi}(x)\hat{S}^{-1}.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.140}$$

□

We now prove

$$\gamma_5 \hat{S} = \det|a| \hat{S} \gamma_5. \tag{2.141}$$

This is easily proven that for proper Lorentz transformations (here $\det|a| = 1$), first

$$[\gamma_5, \hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu}] = \frac{1}{2}(\gamma_5(\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu - \gamma_\nu\gamma_\mu) - (\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu - \gamma_\nu\gamma_\mu)\gamma_5) = 0$$

where we have used $\gamma^\mu\gamma_5 + \gamma_5\gamma^\mu = 0$. So from the formula for proper Lorentz transformations

$$\hat{S}(\hat{a}) = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{4}\hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu}(I_{\mathbf{n}})^{\mu\nu}\right),$$

we have

$$[\hat{S}(\hat{a}), \gamma_5] = 0. \quad (2.142)$$

We know prove (2.141) for spacial reflections, which are given by

$$\mathbf{x}' = -\mathbf{x}, \quad t' = t, \quad (2.143)$$

with corresponding transformation matrix

$$a^\nu{}_\mu = \eta^{\mu\nu}. \quad (2.144)$$

The relation

$$\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma^\mu\hat{S} = a^\mu{}_\nu\gamma^\nu$$

holds for improper Lorentz transformations as well. Let us denote the parity operator by \hat{P} . We can then write

$$a^\nu{}_\mu\gamma^\mu = \hat{P}\gamma^\nu\hat{P}^{-1}$$

or

$$a^\sigma{}_\nu a^\nu{}_\mu\gamma^\mu = \hat{P}a^\sigma{}_\nu\gamma^\nu\hat{P}^{-1}$$

This is equivalent to

$$\delta_{\mu}^{\sigma}\gamma^{\mu} = \hat{P}\left(\sum_{\nu=0}^3\eta^{\sigma\nu}\gamma^{\nu}\right)\hat{P}^{-1} \quad (2.145)$$

which in turn is equivalent to

$$\hat{P}^{-1}\gamma^{\sigma}\hat{P} = \eta^{\sigma\sigma}\gamma^{\sigma}. \quad (2.146)$$

This has the simple solution

$$\hat{P} = e^{i\varphi\gamma^0}, \quad \hat{P}^{-1} = e^{-i\varphi\gamma^0} \quad (2.147)$$

For this operator we easily have

$$\hat{P}\gamma_5 = -\gamma_5\hat{P}. \quad (2.148)$$

□

i) $\bar{\psi}\psi$ is a scalar:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\psi}\psi &\rightarrow \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\hat{S}\psi \\ &= \bar{\psi}\psi \end{aligned}$$

ii) $\bar{\psi}\gamma_5\psi$ is a pseudoscalar:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\psi}\gamma_5\psi &\rightarrow \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma_5\hat{S}\psi \\ &= \det|a|\bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\hat{S}\gamma_5\psi \\ &= \det|a|\bar{\psi}\gamma_5\psi \end{aligned}$$

iii) $\bar{\psi}\gamma^{\mu}\psi$ is a vector:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\psi}\gamma^{\mu}\psi &\rightarrow \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma^{\mu}\hat{S}\psi \\ &= a^{\mu}_{\nu}\bar{\psi}\gamma^{\nu}\psi \end{aligned}$$

iv) $\bar{\psi}\gamma_5\gamma^{\mu}\psi$ is a pseudovector:

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{\psi}\gamma_5\gamma^\mu\psi &\rightarrow \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma_5\gamma^\mu\hat{S}\psi \\
&= \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma_5\hat{S}(\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma^\mu\hat{S})\psi \\
&= \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma_5\hat{S}(a^\mu{}_\nu\gamma^\nu)\psi \\
&= \det|a|a^\mu{}_\nu\bar{\psi}\gamma^\nu\psi \\
&= \det|a|a^\mu{}_\nu\bar{\psi}\gamma^\nu\psi
\end{aligned}$$

v) $\bar{\psi}\hat{\sigma}^{\mu\nu}\psi$ is a pseudovector:

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{\psi}\hat{\sigma}^{\mu\nu}\psi &\rightarrow \bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}\hat{\sigma}^{\mu\nu}\hat{S}\psi \\
&= \frac{i}{2}\bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}(\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu - \gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu)\hat{S}\psi \\
&= \frac{i}{2}\bar{\psi}\hat{S}^{-1}(\gamma^\mu\hat{S}\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma^\nu - \gamma^\nu\hat{S}\hat{S}^{-1}\gamma^\mu)\hat{S}\psi \\
&= \frac{i}{2}\bar{\psi}\{(a^\mu{}_\rho\gamma^\rho)(a^\nu{}_\tau\gamma^\tau) - (a^\nu{}_\rho\gamma^\rho)(a^\mu{}_\tau\gamma^\tau)\}\psi \\
&= a^\mu{}_\rho a^\nu{}_\tau \bar{\psi} \frac{i}{2} (\gamma^\rho\gamma^\tau - \gamma^\tau\gamma^\rho)\psi \\
&= a^\mu{}_\rho a^\nu{}_\tau \bar{\psi}\hat{\sigma}^{\rho\tau}\psi.
\end{aligned}$$

□

2.14 Properties of Free Solutions

$$(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - \epsilon_r m_0)\omega^r(\mathbf{p}) = 0 \quad (2.149)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - \epsilon_r m_0)\omega^r(\mathbf{p})]^\dagger &= 0 = \omega^{r\dagger}(\mathbf{p})(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - \epsilon_r m_0)^\dagger \\
&= \omega^{r\dagger}(\mathbf{p})(p_\mu\gamma^{\mu\dagger} - \epsilon_r m_0) \\
&= \omega^{r\dagger}(\mathbf{p})(p_0\gamma^0 - p_k\gamma^k - \epsilon_r m_0)
\end{aligned}$$

Multiplication from the right by γ^0 yields

$$\begin{aligned}
\omega^{r\dagger}(\mathbf{p})(p_\mu\gamma^{\mu\dagger} - \epsilon_r m_0)\gamma^0 &= 0 = \omega^{r\dagger}(\mathbf{p})\gamma^0(p_0\gamma^0 + p_k\gamma^k - \epsilon_r m_0) \\
&= \bar{\omega}^r(\mathbf{p})(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - \epsilon_r m_0)
\end{aligned}$$

2.14.1 The normalisation condition

The quantity $\bar{\omega}^r(\mathbf{p})\omega^{r'}(\mathbf{p})$ is a Lorentz scalar and hence

$$\bar{\omega}^r(\mathbf{p})\omega^{r'}(\mathbf{p}) = \bar{\omega}^r(0)\omega^{r'}(0) = \omega^{r\dagger}(0)\gamma^0\omega^{r'}(0) = \delta_{rr'}\epsilon_r. \quad (2.150)$$

2.14.2 The completeness relation

We have

$$\omega^{r\dagger}(\epsilon_r\mathbf{p})\omega^{r'}(\epsilon_r\mathbf{p}) = \delta_{rr'}(E/m_0)$$

This is proved in section A.8.

2.14.3 The closure relation

In the rest frame of the electron we have

$$\sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \omega^r(0) \bar{\omega}_\beta^r(0) = \delta_{\alpha\beta} \quad (2.151)$$

We know that

$$\omega^r(p) = \hat{S} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \omega^r(0)$$

and so

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\omega}^r(p) &= \omega^{r\dagger}(p)\gamma^0 \\ &= \left(\hat{S} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \omega^r(0) \right)^\dagger \gamma^0 \\ &= \omega^{r\dagger}(0)\gamma^0\gamma^0\hat{S}^\dagger \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \gamma^0 \\ &= \bar{\omega}^r(0)\hat{S}^{-1} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (2.152)$$

where we have used

$$\hat{S}^\dagger = \gamma^0 \hat{S}^{-1} \gamma^0.$$

Using these we find

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \omega_\alpha^r(p) \bar{\omega}_\beta^r(p) &= \sum_{r=1}^4 \sum_{\gamma, \lambda=1}^4 \epsilon_r \hat{S}_{\alpha\gamma} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \omega_\gamma^r(0) \bar{\omega}_\lambda^r(0) \hat{S}_{\lambda\beta}^{-1} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \\ &= \sum_{\gamma, \lambda=1}^4 \hat{S}_{\alpha\gamma} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \hat{S}_{\lambda\beta} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \omega_\gamma^r(0) \bar{\omega}_\lambda^r(0) \\ &= \sum_{\gamma, \lambda=1}^4 \hat{S}_{\alpha\gamma} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \hat{S}_{\lambda\beta} \left(\frac{-\mathbf{p}}{E} \right) \delta_{\gamma\lambda} \\ &= \delta_{\alpha\beta} \end{aligned} \tag{2.153}$$

Therefore we have the closure relation

$$\sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \omega_\alpha^r(p) \bar{\omega}_\beta^r(p) = \delta_{\alpha\beta}. \tag{2.154}$$

2.15 Projection Operators for Energy and Spin

2.15.1 Projection Operators for Energy

Recall

$$(p_\mu \gamma^\mu - \epsilon_r m_0 c) w^r(\mathbf{p}) \quad \text{which implies} \quad \epsilon_r p_\mu \gamma^\mu w^r(\mathbf{p}) = m_0 c w^r(\mathbf{p})$$

We immediately see that the projection operator for eigenstates with positive or negative energy is given by

$$\hat{\Lambda}_r(p) = \frac{\epsilon_r p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0 c}{2m_0} \tag{2.155}$$

and that it is Lorentz covariant. We check that it has all the properties of a projection operator. Obviously

$$\hat{\Lambda}_+(p) + \hat{\Lambda}_-(p) = \frac{+p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} + \frac{-p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0 c} = 1$$

We now establish $(\hat{\Lambda}_+)^2 = \hat{\Lambda}_+$, $(\hat{\Lambda}_-)^2 = \hat{\Lambda}_-$, and $\hat{\Lambda}_+ \hat{\Lambda}_- = 0$. This is done with the help of

$$\begin{aligned} p^\mu \gamma_\mu p^\nu \gamma_\nu &= \frac{1}{2}(\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu + \gamma_\nu \gamma_\mu) p^\mu p^\nu \\ &= \eta_{\mu\nu} p^\mu p^\nu \\ &= E^2 - \mathbf{p}^2 \\ &= (m_0^2 + \mathbf{p}^2) - \mathbf{p}^2 = m_0^2. \end{aligned} \tag{2.156}$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\Lambda}_r(p) \hat{\Lambda}_{r'}(p) &= \frac{(\epsilon_r p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0)(\epsilon_{r'} p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0)}{4m_0^2} \\ &= \frac{(\epsilon_r \epsilon_{r'} p^\mu p^\nu \gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu + m_0^2 + (\epsilon_r + \epsilon_{r'}) m_0 p^\mu \gamma_\mu)}{4m_0^2} \\ &= \frac{m_0^2(1 + \epsilon_r \epsilon_{r'}) + m_0 p^\mu \gamma_\mu \epsilon_r (1 + \epsilon_r \epsilon_{r'})}{4m_0^2} \\ &= \frac{1 + \epsilon_r \epsilon_{r'}}{2} \frac{\epsilon_r p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} = \frac{1 + \epsilon_r \epsilon_{r'}}{2} \hat{\Lambda}_r(p). \end{aligned} \tag{2.157}$$

2.15.2 Projection Operators for Spin

In the non-relativistic limit the operator for “spin up” or “spin down”

$$\hat{P}_\pm = \frac{1 \pm \hat{\sigma}_3}{2}$$

We can generalise this to a spin-projection operator in an arbitrary direction

$$\hat{P}(\mathbf{u}) = \frac{1 + \hat{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{u}}{2} \tag{2.158}$$

where \mathbf{u} is a unit vector. We need the relativistic generalisation of this. To that end introduce the four-vector

$$u^\nu \tag{2.159}$$

which in the rest system of the electron is

$$(u_z^\nu)_{R.S.} = (0, 0, 0, 1) = (0, 0, 0, \mathbf{u}_z) \quad (2.160)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_5 \gamma_3 (u_z^3)_{R.S.} &= \gamma_5 \gamma_3 \\ &= i \gamma^0 \gamma^1 \gamma^2 \gamma^3 \gamma_3 \\ &= i \gamma^0 \gamma^1 \gamma^2 \\ &= i \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & -I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sigma_1 \\ -\sigma_1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sigma_2 \\ -\sigma_2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_3 & 0 \\ 0 & -\sigma_3 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.161)$$

In the rest frame we have for positive-energy $\omega^{1,2}(0)$

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\Sigma}(u_z^3) \omega^{1,2}(0) &= \frac{1 + \gamma_5 \gamma^3 (u_z^3)_{R.S.}}{2} \omega^{1,2}(0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} I + \sigma_3 & 0 \\ 0 & I - \sigma_3 \end{pmatrix} \omega^{1,2}(0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \begin{cases} 1 \cdot \omega^1(0) \\ 0 \cdot \omega^2(0) \end{cases} \cdot \end{aligned} \quad (2.162)$$

In the rest frame we have for negative-energy

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\Sigma}(u_z^3) \omega^{3,4}(0) &= \frac{1 + \gamma_5 \gamma^3 (u_z^3)_{R.S.}}{2} \omega^{3,4}(0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} I + \sigma_3 & 0 \\ 0 & I - \sigma_3 \end{pmatrix} \omega^{3,4}(0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \begin{cases} 0 \cdot \omega^3(0) \\ 1 \cdot \omega^4(0) \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (2.163)$$

The projection of negative-energy states are opposite to those of positive-energy states. The opposite occurs because the spin of the missing particle of spin \uparrow corresponds to a particle of spin \downarrow .

We generalise the spin projection operator for an arbitrary spin vector s^μ with $s^\mu p_\mu = 0$:

$$\hat{\Sigma}(s) = \frac{1}{2} (1 + \gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu) \quad (2.164)$$

We show that it is a true projection operator. We have

$$\hat{\Sigma}(s) + \hat{\Sigma}(-s) = 1 \quad (2.165)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\Sigma}^2(s) &= \frac{1}{4}(1 + \gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu)(1 + \gamma_5 s^\nu \gamma_\nu) \\ &= \frac{1}{4}(1 + 2\gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu + s^\mu s^\nu \gamma_5 \gamma_\mu \gamma_5 \gamma_\nu) \\ &= \frac{1}{4}(1 + 2\gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu - s^\mu s^\nu \gamma_5^2 \gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu) \\ &= \frac{1}{4}(1 + 2\gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu - s^\mu s^\nu \gamma_5^2 \frac{1}{2}(\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu + \gamma_\nu \gamma_\mu)) \\ &= \frac{1}{4}(1 + 2\gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu - s \cdot s) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(1 + \gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu) = \hat{\Sigma}(s) \end{aligned} \quad (2.166)$$

Similarly $\hat{\Sigma}^2(-s) = \hat{\Sigma}(-s)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\Sigma}(s)\hat{\Sigma}(-s) &= \frac{1}{4}(1 + \gamma_5 s^\mu \gamma_\mu)(1 - \gamma_5 s^\nu \gamma_\nu) \\ &= \frac{1}{4}(1 + s \cdot s) = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (2.167)$$

2.15.3 Simjultaneous Projection Operators for Energy and Spin

$$\begin{aligned} p_\mu \gamma^\mu \gamma_5 \gamma^\nu s_\nu &= p_\mu \gamma^\mu i \gamma^0 \gamma^1 \gamma^2 \gamma^3 \gamma^\nu s_\nu \\ &= -i \gamma^0 \gamma^1 \gamma^2 \gamma^3 \gamma^\mu \gamma^\nu s_\nu p_\mu \\ &= -\gamma_5 (2\eta^{\mu\nu} - \gamma^\nu \gamma^\mu) s_\nu p_\mu \\ &= s^\mu p_\mu \gamma_5 + s_\nu p_\mu \gamma_5 \gamma^\nu \gamma^\mu \\ &= \gamma_5 s_\nu \gamma^\nu p_\mu \gamma^\mu \end{aligned} \quad (2.168)$$

implies

$$\left[\hat{\Sigma}(s), \hat{\Lambda}_\pm(p) \right] = 0 \quad (2.169)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{P}_1 &= \hat{\Lambda}_+(p)\hat{\Sigma}(u_z) \\
\hat{P}_2 &= \hat{\Lambda}_+(p)\hat{\Sigma}(-u_z) \\
\hat{P}_3 &= \hat{\Lambda}_-(p)\hat{\Sigma}(u_z) \\
\hat{P}_4 &= \hat{\Lambda}_-(p)\hat{\Sigma}(-u_z)
\end{aligned} \tag{2.170}$$

2.16 Summary

Maxwell's equations with source are

$$\square A^\mu - \partial^\mu(\partial_\nu A^\nu) = j^\mu \tag{2.171}$$

where we are free to perform gauge transformations

$$A^\mu \rightarrow A^{\mu'} = A^\mu + \partial^\mu \Lambda. \tag{2.172}$$

The free Dirac equation can be written

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi(x)}{\partial t} = [\alpha \cdot (-i\hbar \nabla) + \beta m_0] \psi(x) \tag{2.173}$$

where $(\hat{\alpha}_1, \hat{\alpha}_2, \hat{\alpha}_3)$ and $\hat{\beta}$ are 4×4 Hermitian matrices satisfying

$$\hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j + \hat{\alpha}_j \hat{\alpha}_i = 2\delta_{ij}, \quad \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\beta} + \hat{\beta} \hat{\alpha}_i = 0, \quad \beta^2 = 1, \quad i = 1, 2, 3. \tag{2.174}$$

With

$$\gamma^0 = \beta, \quad \gamma^i = \beta \alpha_i \tag{2.175}$$

Dirac's equation becomes

$$i\hbar \gamma^\mu \frac{\partial \psi(x)}{\partial x^\mu} - m_0 \psi(x) = 0 \tag{2.176}$$

with the 4×4 matrices γ^μ , $\mu = 0, \dots, 3$, satisfying the anticommutation relations

$$\gamma^\mu \gamma^\nu + \gamma^\nu \gamma^\mu = 2\eta^{\mu\nu} \tag{2.177}$$

and Hermiticity conditions

$$\gamma^{\mu\dagger} = \gamma^0 \gamma^\mu \gamma^0. \quad (2.178)$$

Coupling of a Spinor to the electromagnetic field is given by

$$(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu - e\gamma^\mu A_\mu(x) - m_0)\psi(x) = 0. \quad (2.179)$$

The four current density of the dirac field is given by

$$j^\mu = \bar{\psi} \gamma^\mu \psi \quad (2.180)$$

The plane wave for a photon is

$$A_\mu(x, k) = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}} \epsilon_\mu(k, \lambda) (e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}) \quad (2.181)$$

Plane waves of electrons: incoming

$$\psi(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{EV}} u(p, s) e^{-ip \cdot x} \quad (2.182)$$

and outgoing

$$\bar{\psi}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{EV}} \bar{u}(p, s) e^{ip \cdot x}. \quad (2.183)$$

The general free solution has the form

$$\psi^r(x) = \omega^r(p) e^{-i\epsilon_r p_\mu x^\mu} \quad (2.184)$$

where

$$[\omega^1(p), \omega^2(p), \omega^3(p), \omega^4(p)] = \sqrt{\frac{E + m_0}{2m_0}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{p_z}{E+m_0} & \frac{p_-}{E+m_0} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{p_+}{E+m_0} & \frac{-p_z}{E+m_0} \\ \frac{p_z}{E+m_0} & \frac{p_-}{E+m_0} & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{p_+}{E+m_0} & \frac{-p_z}{E+m_0} & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.185)$$

The orthogonality condition for spinors

$$\omega^{r\dagger}(\epsilon_r p)\omega^{r'}(\epsilon_r' p) = \frac{E_p}{m_0}\delta_{rr'} \quad (2.186)$$

The completeness relation for spinors

$$\sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \omega^r(p) \bar{\omega}_\alpha^r(p) = \delta_{\alpha\beta} \quad (2.187)$$

There are projection operators for Energy

$$\hat{\Lambda}_\pm(p) = \frac{\pm p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \quad (2.188)$$

and spin

$$\hat{\Sigma} = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \gamma_5 s_\mu \gamma^\mu) \quad (2.189)$$

such that

$$\hat{\Sigma}u(p, +s) = u(p, +s), \quad \hat{\Sigma}u(p, -s) = 0. \quad (2.190)$$

The basic bilinear covariants of Dirac theory are

$\bar{\psi}\psi$	scalar	
$\bar{\psi}\gamma^\mu\psi$	vector	
$\bar{\psi}\sigma^{\mu\nu}\psi$	antisymmetric second-rank tensor	
$\bar{\psi}\gamma^5\gamma^\mu\psi$	pseudo-vector	
$\bar{\psi}\gamma^5\psi$	pseudo-scalar	(2.191)

Chapter 3

Perturbation Theory

3.1 Non-Relativistic Green's Function

Given Schrodinger's equation

$$\left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \hat{H}_0(x) - V(x) \right) \psi(x) = 0 \quad (3.1)$$

The retarded Green's function is defined by the differential equation

$$\left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t'} - \hat{H}_0(x') - V(x') \right) G^+(x'; x) = \delta^4(x' - x) \quad (3.2)$$

and the boundary condition

$$G^+(x'; x) = 0 \quad \text{for } t' < t. \quad (3.3)$$

3.1.1 Free Green's function in momentum space

$$\left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t'} - \hat{H}_0(x') \right) G^+(x'; x) = \delta^4(x' - x) \quad (3.4)$$

where

$$\hat{H}_0 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla'^2 \quad (3.5)$$

As the above differential equation can be turned into an algebraic equation in energy-momentum space, we write

$$G_0^+(x' - x) = \int \frac{d^3 p dE}{(2\pi\hbar)^4} \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar}E(t' - t)\right] \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})\right] G_0^+(p; E) \quad (3.6)$$

and apply

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t'} + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla'^2\right) G_0^+(x' - x) \\ &= \int \frac{d^3 p dE}{(2\pi\hbar)^4} \left\{ \left(E - \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}\right) G_0^+(p; E) \right\} \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar}E(t' - t)\right] \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})\right] \\ &= \hbar \delta^4(x' - x) \end{aligned} \quad (3.7)$$

We will recall the δ -function integral representation

$$\int \frac{d^3 p dE}{(2\pi\hbar)^4} \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar}E(t' - t)\right] \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})\right] = \delta^4(x' - x)$$

Therefore for $E \neq \mathbf{p}^2/2m$ we obtain

$$G_0^+(\mathbf{p}, E) = \frac{\hbar}{E - \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}} \quad (3.8)$$

How do we deal with the singularity when we do the inverse Fourier transformation? The clue how to proceed comes from the integral representation of the step function:

$$\Theta(\tau) = -\frac{1}{2\pi i} \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega \frac{e^{-i\omega\tau}}{\omega + i\epsilon}. \quad (3.9)$$

By adding a small imaginary part $i\epsilon$ to the energy one will obtain the retardation condition (3.3), while the resulting Green's function still satisfies the Green's function differential equation (3.4) in the limit $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$. Write

$$G_0^+(x' - x) = \hbar \int \frac{d^3 p}{(2\pi\hbar)^3} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})\right] \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dE}{2\pi\hbar} \frac{\exp[-iE(t' - t)/\hbar]}{E - \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} + i\epsilon} \quad (3.10)$$

With the substitution $E' = E - \mathbf{p}^2/2m$ the last integral becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dE'}{2\pi\hbar} \frac{\exp[-i(E' + \mathbf{p}^2/2m)(t' - t)/\hbar]}{E' + i\epsilon} \\
= & \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}(t' - t)\right] \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dE'}{2\pi\hbar} \frac{\exp[-iE'(t' - t)/\hbar]}{E' + i\epsilon} \\
= & \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}(t' - t)\right] \frac{-i}{\hbar} \cdot \frac{-1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dE' \frac{\exp[-iE'(t' - t)/\hbar]}{E' + i\epsilon} \\
= & \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}(t' - t)\right] \left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \Theta\left(\frac{t' - t}{\hbar}\right)\right] \\
= & -\frac{i}{\hbar} \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}(t' - t)\right] \Theta(t' - t) \tag{3.11}
\end{aligned}$$

We do indeed recover the retardation condition. Now (3.10) becomes

$$G_0^+(x' - x) = -i\Theta(t' - t) \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi\hbar)^3} \exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar} \left[\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x}) - \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}(t' - t)\right]\right\} \tag{3.12}$$

This can be expressed in terms of plane waves of the free Schrodinger's equation. The δ -function normalised plane waves are

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi_p(\mathbf{x}, t) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar} \left(\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{x} - \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}t\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \exp[i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x} - \omega t)] \tag{3.13}
\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\hbar\omega = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m}, \quad \hbar\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{p}.$$

$$G_0^+(x' - x) = -i\Theta(t' - t) \int d^3p \phi_p(\mathbf{x}', t') \phi_p^*(\mathbf{x}, t) \tag{3.14}$$

3.1.2 Full Green's function in terms of plane waves

We give a proof that the Green's function can be written as

$$G^+(x'; x) = -i\Theta(t' - t) \sum_n \psi_n^*(x) \psi_n(x'). \tag{3.15}$$

where $\psi_n(\mathbf{x}, t)$ are a complete set of eigenfunctions of Schrodinger's equation. We do this using the closure relation

$$\sum_n \psi_n^*(\mathbf{x}, t) \psi_n(\mathbf{x}', t) = \delta^3(\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x}). \quad (3.16)$$

for the eigenfunctions of Schrodinger's equation

$$\left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t'} - \hat{H}(x') \right) \psi_n(x') = 0. \quad (3.17)$$

Using this we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t'} - \hat{H}(x') \right) G^+(x'; x) &= \hbar \delta(t' - t) \sum_n \psi_n^*(\mathbf{x}, t) \psi_n(\mathbf{x}', t) \\ &\quad - i\Theta(t' - t) \sum_n \left[\left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t'} - \hat{H}(x') \right) \psi_n(x') \right] \psi_n^*(x) \\ &= \hbar \delta(t' - t) \delta^3(\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x}) \\ &= \hbar \delta^4(x' - x). \end{aligned} \quad (3.18)$$

We have the relations describing the evolution of solutions of Schrodinger's equation:

$$\begin{aligned} i \int d^3x G^+(x'; x) \psi_n(x) &= \Theta(t' - t) \sum_m \psi_m(x') \int d^3x \psi_m^*(x) \psi_n(x) \\ &= \Theta(t' - t) \psi_n(x') \end{aligned} \quad (3.19)$$

and on the other hand

$$\begin{aligned} i \int d^3x \psi_n^*(x') G^+(x'; x) &= \Theta(t' - t) \sum_m \int d^3x' \psi_m(x') \psi_n^*(x') \psi_m^*(x) \\ &= \Theta(t' - t) \psi_n^*(x) \end{aligned} \quad (3.20)$$

The first of these relations expresses the propagation of $\psi_n(x)$ forward in time and the second corresponding backward propagation of $\psi_n^*(x')$.

3.1.3 Perturbation theory

$$\left(i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t'} - \hat{H}_0\right)G^+(x';x) = \delta^4(x' - x) + V(x')G^+(x';x) \quad (3.21)$$

The RHS can be interpreted as the source term in an inhomogeneous Schrodinger equation:

$$\left(i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t'} - \hat{H}_0(x')\right)G^+(x';x) = \rho(x';x) \quad (3.22)$$

Using the free Green's function G_0 the solution is

$$G^+(x';x) = \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x';x_1)\rho(x_1;x) \quad (3.23)$$

This leads to the following integral equation for the integrating Green's function

$$\begin{aligned} G^+(x';x) &= \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x';x_1)(\delta^4(x_1 - x) + V(x_1)G^+(x_1;x)) \\ &= G_0^+(x';x) + \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x';x_1)V(x_1)G^+(x_1;x) \end{aligned} \quad (3.24)$$

Repeatedly substituting this equation into itself we obtain perturbative series

$$\begin{aligned} G^+(x';x) &= G_0^+(x';x) + \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x';x_1)V(x_1)G^+(x_1;x) \\ &= G_0^+(x';x) + \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x';x_1)V(x_1)G_0^+(x_1;x) \\ &\quad + \int d^4x_1 d^4x_2 G_0^+(x';x_1)V(x_1)G_0^+(x_1;x_2)V(x_2)G_0^+(x_2;x) \\ &\quad + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (3.25)$$

3.1.4 Boundary condition

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi(x') &= \lim_{t \rightarrow -\infty} i \int d^3x G^+(x'; x) \phi(x) \\
&= \lim_{t \rightarrow -\infty} i \int d^3x \left(G_0^+(x'; x) + \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x'; x_1) V(x_1) G^+(x_1; x) \right) \phi(x) \\
&= \phi(x') + \lim_{t \rightarrow -\infty} \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x'; x_1) V(x_1) i \int d^3x G^+(x_1; x) \phi(x) \\
&= \phi(x') + \lim_{t \rightarrow -\infty} \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x'; x_1) V(x_1) \psi(x_1)
\end{aligned} \tag{3.26}$$

The second term on the RHS is the scattered wave.

We consider a scattering problem where no interaction occurs in the distant past and future:

$$V(\mathbf{x}, t) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{for} \quad t \rightarrow \mp\infty \tag{3.27}$$

The initial wave ϕ is therefore a solution of the Schrodinger equation for free particles, which fulfills the initial conditions of the experiment. The exact wavefunction $\psi(\mathbf{x}, t)$ then approaches the incoming wave $\phi(\mathbf{x}, t)$ in the limit $t \rightarrow -\infty$:

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, t) \rightarrow \phi(\mathbf{x}, t). \tag{3.28}$$

3.1.5 The scattering matrix

Let $\phi_i(x)$ and $\phi_f(x)$ denote the initial and final free wave with quantum numbers i and f that are emitted, observed at the beginning, end of the scattering process respectively. The full wavefunction $\psi_i(x)$ is given in terms the integral equation,

$$\psi_i(x) = \phi_i(x) + \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x, x_1) V(x_1) \psi_i(x_1) \tag{3.29}$$

The wavefunction $\psi_i(x)$ satisfies the boundary condition $\psi_i(\mathbf{x}, t) \rightarrow \phi_i(\mathbf{x}, t)$ for $t \rightarrow -\infty$. The scattering matrix results from the projection of $\psi_i(x)$ on the final state $\phi_f(\mathbf{x}, t)$

$$S_{fi} = \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \left\langle \phi_f(x) \left| \psi_i(x) \right. \right\rangle \tag{3.30}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi} &= \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \left\langle \phi_f(x) \left| \phi_i(x) + \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x, x_1) V(x_1) \psi(x_1) \right. \right\rangle \\
&= \delta_{fi} + \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \int d^3x \phi_f^*(x) \int d^4x_1 G_0^+(x, x_1) V(x_1) \psi(x_1) \\
&= \delta_{fi} + \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \int d^4x_1 \left(\int d^3x \phi_f^*(x) G_0^+(x, x_1) \right) V(x_1) \psi(x_1) \quad (3.31)
\end{aligned}$$

Using the equations (3.20) for free particles we obtain

$$\int d^3x \phi_f^*(x) G_0^+(x'; x_1) = -i \phi_f(x_1) \quad \text{for } t' > t_1, \quad (3.32)$$

so the x integral can be carried out resulting in

$$S_{fi} = \delta_{fi} - i \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \int d^4x_1 \phi_f^*(x_1) V(x_1) \psi(x_1) \quad (3.33)$$

Now repeatedly substituting (3.29) into this we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi} &= \delta_{fi} - i \int d^4x_1 \phi_f^*(x_1) V(x_1) \phi_i(x_1) \\
&\quad - i \int d^4x_1 d^4x_2 \phi_f^*(x_1) V(x_1) G_0^+(x_1; x_2) V(x_2) \phi_i(x_2) \\
&\quad - i \int d^4x_1 d^4x_2 \phi_f^*(x_1) V(x_1) G_0^+(x_1; x_2) V(x_2) G_0^+(x_2; x_3) V(x_3) \phi_i(x_3) \\
&\quad + \dots \quad (3.34)
\end{aligned}$$

Each line represents a free Green's function $G_0^+(x_i; x_{i-1})$, i.e. the amplitude that a particle wave originating at the spacetime point x_{i-1} and propagates freely to the spacetime point x_i . At the point x_i the particle wave is scattered with probability amplitude $V(x_i)$ per unit spacetime volume. Such points are called interaction vertices and are denoted by filled-in circles. The resulting scattered wave then again propagates freely forward in time (recall $G_0^+(x_{i+1}; x_i) = 0$ for $t_{i+1} < t_i$) from the spacetime point x_i towards the point x_{i+1} with the amplitude $G_0^+(x_{i+1}; x_i)$ where the next interaction takes place, and so on.

3.2 The Electron and Positron Propagator

3.2.1 Differential equation for relativistic propagator

Let us introduce the relativistic propagator

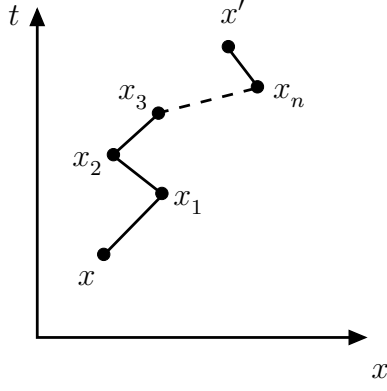


Figure 3.1: n th-order Green's function as the probability amplitude for multiple scattering.

$$S_F(x', x; A) \tag{3.35}$$

in analogy to the nonrelativistic propagator, by satisfying the following differential equation

$$\left[\gamma_\mu \left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x'_\mu} - \frac{e}{c} A^\mu(x') \right) - m_0 \right] S_F(x', x; A) = \hbar \delta^4(x' - x) \mathbf{1}. \tag{3.36}$$

We from now on use natural units

$$\frac{e}{\hbar c} \rightarrow e, \quad \frac{m_0 c}{\hbar} \rightarrow m_0. \tag{3.37}$$

Thus we write

$$\left[\gamma_\mu \left(i\partial'^\mu - eA^\mu(x') \right) - m_0 \right] S_F(x', x; A) = \delta^4(x' - x). \tag{3.38}$$

where we have suppressed the unit matrix, however, it must be kept in mind that we are dealing with a matrix equation.

The free-particle propagator satisfies (3.38) with the interaction term $\gamma_\mu A^\mu(x')$ absent, i.e.

$$(i\gamma_\mu \partial'^\mu - m_0) S_F(x', x) = \delta^4(x' - x). \tag{3.39}$$

As in the non-relativistic case we calculate $S_F(x', x)$ in momentum space.

3.2.2 Non-interacting propagator in momentum space

$$S_F(x', x) = S_F(x' - x) = \int \frac{d^4 p}{(2\pi)^4} \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] S_F(p) \quad (3.40)$$

which implies that

$$(p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0) S_F(p) = \mathbf{1} \quad (3.41)$$

This can be solved for $S_F(p)$ by multiplying by $(p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0)$ from the left

$$(p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0)(p^\nu \gamma_\nu - m_0) S_F(p) = (p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0) \quad (3.42)$$

Since

$$p^\mu \gamma_\mu p^\nu \gamma_\nu = \frac{1}{2}(\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu + \gamma_\nu \gamma_\mu) p^\mu p^\nu = \eta_{\mu\nu} p^\mu p^\nu = p_\mu p^\mu = p^2$$

we then have

$$(p^2 - m_0^2) S_F(p) = p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0$$

so

$$S_F(p) = \frac{p^\mu \gamma_\mu + m_0}{p^2 - m_0^2} \quad \text{for } p^2 \neq m_0^2 \quad (3.43)$$

Let us consider the inverse Fourier transformation.

$$\begin{aligned} S_F(x' - x) &= \int \frac{d^4 p}{(2\pi)^4} S_F(p) \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] \\ &= \int \frac{d^4 p}{(2\pi)^4} S_F(p) \exp\{[-ip_0 \cdot (t' - t) - \mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})]\} \\ &= \int \frac{d^3 p}{(2\pi)^3} S_F(p) \exp[i\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})] \times \int_C \frac{dp_0}{2\pi} \frac{\exp[-ip_0 \cdot (t' - t)]}{p^2 - m_0^2} \end{aligned} \quad (3.44)$$

where C is contour of integration choosen to avoid the singularities of $S_F(p)$. As we know from the nonrelativistic case the choice of contour encodes the boundary conditions imposed on $S_F(x' - x)$.

3.2.3 Propagator describing positive-energy particle waves

Considering the particle's propagation forward in time implies that $t' - t$ is positive so that the p_0 integration must be performed along the contour closed in the lower half plane as this gives vanishing contribution. Then the only pole is at

$$p_0 = +E_p = +\sqrt{\mathbf{p}^2 + m_0^2}.$$

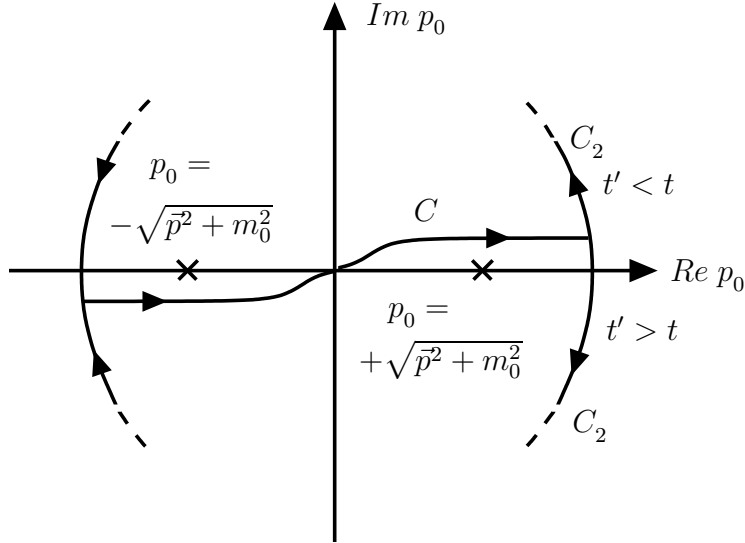


Figure 3.2:

The propagator is then

$$S_F^{(t'>t)}(x' - x) = -i \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \exp[i\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})] \exp[-iE_p(t' - t)] \times \frac{(E_p \gamma^0 - \mathbf{p} \cdot \boldsymbol{\gamma} + m_0)}{2E_p} \quad \text{for } t' > t. \quad (3.45)$$

Instead of deforming the contour as in fig (3.2.3), we can move the poles an infinitesimal distance η off the real axis, as shown in fig (), and perform the p_0 integration along the whole real axis

3.2.4 Propagator describing negative-energy particle waves

On the other hand, considering the particle's propagation backward in time implies that $t' - t$ is negative so that the p_0 integration must be performed along the contour closed

in the upper half plane as this gives vanishing contribution. Then the only pole is at

$$p_0 = -E_p = -\sqrt{\mathbf{p}^2 + m_0^2}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_F^{(t>t')}(x' - x) &= -i \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \exp[i\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x})] \exp[+iE_p(t' - t)] \\ &\times \frac{(-E_p\gamma^0 - \mathbf{p} \cdot \boldsymbol{\gamma} + m_0)}{2E_p} \quad \text{for } t' < t. \end{aligned} \quad (3.46)$$

3.3 Propagating Positive and Negative Particles

We combine the two propagators describing positive-energy particle waves and negative-energy particle waves moving forward and backward in time, respectively.

$$S_F(x' - x) = S_F^{(t'>t)}(x' - x) + S_F^{(t>t')}(x' - x) \quad (3.47)$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_F(x' - x) &= -i \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \\ &\left\{ \exp[-i(+E_p)(t' - t)] \exp[+i\vec{p} \cdot (\vec{x}' - \vec{x})] \frac{(+E_p\gamma^0 + p_i\gamma^i + m_0)}{2E_p} \Theta(t' - t) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \exp[-i(-E_p)(t' - t)] \exp[-i\vec{p} \cdot (\vec{x}' - \vec{x})] \frac{(-E_p\gamma^0 - p_i\gamma^i + m_0)}{2E_p} \Theta(t - t') \right\} \\ &= -i \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \left\{ \frac{p_\mu\gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] \Theta(t' - t) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{-p_\mu\gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \exp[ip \cdot (x' - x)] \Theta(t' - t) \right\} \\ &= -i \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_p} (\hat{\Lambda}_+(p) \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] \Theta(t - t') \\ &\quad + \hat{\Lambda}_-(p) \exp[ip \cdot (x' - x)] \Theta(t' - t)) \end{aligned} \quad (3.48)$$

3.3.1 Free propagator in terms of plane waves

This can also be written in terms of the normalised Dirac plane waves

$$\begin{aligned}
S_F(x' - x) &= -i\Theta(t' - t) \int d^3p \sum_{r=1}^2 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) \\
&\quad + i\Theta(t - t') \int d^3p \sum_{r=3}^4 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x)
\end{aligned} \tag{3.49}$$

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{r=1}^2 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] \sum_{r=1}^2 \omega^r(p) \bar{\omega}^r(p) \\
&= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] \underbrace{\sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \omega^r(p) \bar{\omega}^r(p)}_{=1} \frac{p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \\
&= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] \frac{p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \\
&= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \exp[-ip \cdot (x' - x)] \hat{\Lambda}_+(p)
\end{aligned}$$

A similiary calculation for the second part gives

$$\sum_{r=3}^4 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) = -\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \exp[ip \cdot (x' - x)] \hat{\Lambda}_-(p) \tag{3.50}$$

□

Using this we easily verify:

$$\Theta(t' - t) \psi^{(+E)}(x') = i \int d^3x S_F(x' - x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(+E)}(x), \tag{3.51}$$

$$\Theta(t - t') \psi^{(-E)}(x') = -i \int d^3x S_F(x' - x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(-E)}(x), \tag{3.52}$$

(see section A.12). Equation (3.51) explicitly expresses the interpretation of electrons in terms of positive-energy solutions propagating forward in time and equation (3.52) the interpretation of positrons in terms of negative-energy solutions moving backward in time.

The reader should be warnred no to take this pictorial description of the mathematics as a literal process in space and time. For example, for x and x' with space-like separation,

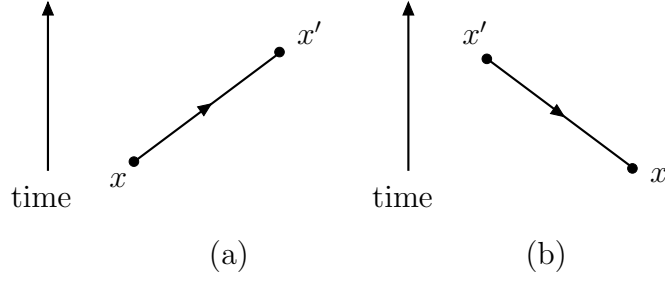


Figure 3.3: (a) $t < t'$: an electron propagated from x to x' . (b) $t > t'$: a positron propagated from x' to x .

our naive interpretation of propagation would imply the electron/positron travels between the two points with speed greater than the speed of light.

3.4 Perturbation Expansion for the Stuckelberg-Feynmann Propagator

Equations () or () determine the free-particle propagator of the electron-positron theory. Here we develop a perturbative expansion for how this is modified to the exact propagator in the presence of an electromagnetic potential, the so-called Stuckelberg-Feynmann propagator, $S_F(x', x; A)$.

$$(i\gamma_\mu \partial^\mu - m_0)S_F(x', x; A) = \delta^4(x' - x) + eA_\mu(x')\gamma^\mu S_F(x', x; A) \quad (3.53)$$

This can be viewed as in inhomogeneous Dirac equation of the form

$$(i\gamma_\mu \partial^\mu - m_0)\Psi(x) = \rho(x) \quad (3.54)$$

which is solved by

$$\Psi(x) = \Psi_0(x) + \int d^4y S_F(x - y)\rho(y) \quad (3.55)$$

As is easily seen:

$$\begin{aligned}
(i\gamma_\mu \partial_x^\mu - m_0)\Psi(x) &= (i\gamma_\mu \partial_x^\mu - m_0)\Psi_0(x) + \int d^4y (i\gamma_\mu \partial_x^\mu - m_0)S_F(x-y)\rho(y) \\
&= \int d^4y \delta^4(x-y)\rho(y) \\
&= \rho(x)
\end{aligned} \tag{3.56}$$

In this way we obtain an integral equation for $S_F(x', x; A)$

$$\begin{aligned}
S_F(x', x; A) &= \int d^4y S_F(x'-y) \left[\delta^4(y-x) + eA_\mu(x')\gamma^\mu S_F(y, x; A) \right] \\
&= S_F(x'-y) + e \int d^4y S_F(x'-y)A_\mu(x')\gamma^\mu S_F(y, x; A).
\end{aligned} \tag{3.57}$$

Repeatedly substituting this equation into itself we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
S_F(x', x; A) &= \int d^4y S_F(x'-y) + e \int d^4x_1 S_F(x'-x_1)A_\mu(x_1)\gamma^\mu S_F(x_1-x) \\
&\quad + e^2 \int d^4x_1 d^4x_2 S_F(x'-x_1)A_\mu(x_1)\gamma^\mu S_F(x_1-x_2)A_\nu(x_2)\gamma^\nu S_F(x_2-x) \\
&\quad + \dots
\end{aligned} \tag{3.58}$$

3.4.1 Boundary condition of Feynman and Stuckelberg

$$\Psi(x) = \psi(x) + \int S_F(x-y)e\gamma_\mu A^\mu(y)\Psi(y) \tag{3.59}$$

The second term on the RHS represents the scattered wave.

Now by $() t \equiv x^0 \rightarrow +\infty$

$$S_F(x-y) \rightarrow -i \int d^3p \sum_{r=1}^2 \psi_p^r(x) \bar{\psi}_p^r(y)$$

and $t \equiv x^0 \rightarrow -\infty$

$$S_F(x-y) \rightarrow +i \int d^3p \sum_{r=3}^4 \psi_p^r(x) \bar{\psi}_p^r(y)$$

So that

$$\Psi(x) - \psi(x) \rightarrow \int d^3p \sum_{r=1}^2 \psi_p^r(x) \left(-ie \int d^4y \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi(y) \right) \quad \text{for } t \rightarrow +\infty \quad (3.60)$$

and

$$\Psi(x) - \psi(x) \rightarrow \int d^3p \sum_{r=3}^4 \psi_p^r(x) \left(+ie \int d^4y \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi(y) \right) \quad \text{for } t \rightarrow -\infty \quad (3.61)$$

Therefore the scattered wave contains only positive frequencies

3.5 The S -Matrix Elements

The S -matrix elements are defined in the same manner as in the nonrelativistic case.

Let $\psi_f(x)$ denote the final free wave with quantum numbers f that is observed at the end of the scattering process.

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi} &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} \langle \psi_f(x) | \Psi_i(x) \rangle \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} \left\langle \psi_f(x) \left| \psi_i(x) + \int d^4y S_F(x-y) e A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi_i(x) \right. \right\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (3.62)$$

There are four basic processes to consider: (a) electron scattering; (b) positron scattering; (c) electron-positron pair creation; (d) pair annihilation.

We will need the following relations for adjoint spinors (proven in section A.12).

$$\Theta(t-t') \bar{\psi}^{(+E)}(x') = i \int d^3x \bar{\psi}^{(+E)}(x) \gamma_0 S_F(x'-x) \quad (3.63)$$

$$\Theta(t'-t) \bar{\psi}^{(-E)}(x') = -i \int d^3x \bar{\psi}^{(-E)}(x) \gamma_0 S_F(x'-x). \quad (3.64)$$

These are the adjoint spinor versions of equations (3.51) and (3.52).

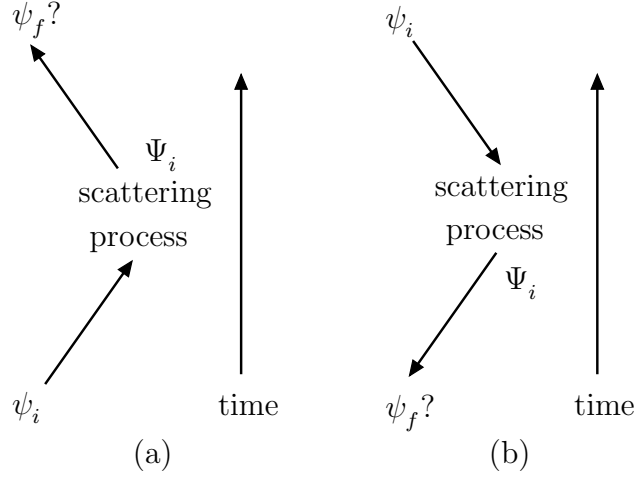


Figure 3.4: $\Psi_i(x)$ stands for the incoming wave, which either reduces at $y_0 \rightarrow -\infty$ to an incident positive energy wave $\psi_i(x)$ or at $y_0 \rightarrow +\infty$ to an incident negative energy wave $\psi_i(x)$. (a) ψ_f describes an electron in the limit $t \rightarrow +\infty$. (b) ψ_f describes a positron in the limit $t \rightarrow -\infty$.

Using (3.63), for electron scattering we have

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi} &= \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \left\langle \psi_f(x) \left| \psi_i(x) + \int d^4y S_F(x-y) e A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi_i(x) \right. \right\rangle \\
&= \delta_{fi} + e \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \int d^3x \psi_f^*(x) \int d^4y S_F(x-y) A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi_i(x) \\
&= \delta_{fi} - ie \lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \int d^4y \left(i \int d^3x \bar{\psi}_f(x) \gamma^0 S_F(x-y) \right) A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi_i(x) \\
&= \delta_{fi} - ie \int d^4y \bar{\psi}_f(y) A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi_i(x)
\end{aligned}$$

while, using (3.64) similarly, positron scattering is described by

$$S_{fi} = \delta_{fi} + ie \int d^4y \bar{\psi}_f(y) A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi_i(x)$$

Both results can be combined by writing

$$S_{fi} = \delta_{fi} - ie \varepsilon_f \int d^4y \bar{\psi}_f(y) A_\mu(y) \gamma^\mu \Psi_i(x) \quad (3.65)$$

where $\varepsilon_f = +1$ for positive energy waves in the future and $\varepsilon_f = -1$ for energy waves in the past. $\Psi_i(x)$ stands for the incoming wave

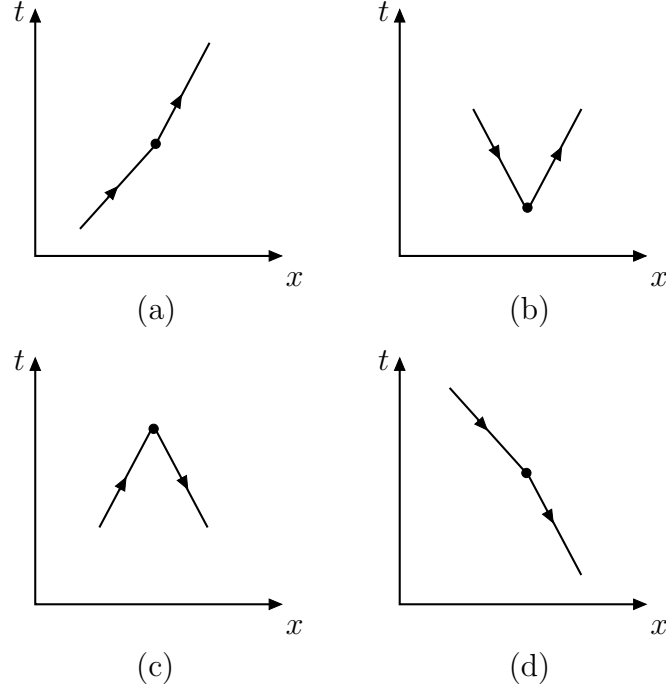


Figure 3.5: (a) electron scattering; (b) electron-positron pair creation; (c) pair annihilation (d) positron scattering.

Repeated substitution of (3.59)

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi} &= \delta_{fi} - e\varepsilon_f \int d^4y \bar{\psi}_f(y) A_\mu \gamma^\mu(y) \Psi_i(y) \\
&= \delta_{fi} - e\varepsilon_f \left[\int d^4y_1 \bar{\psi}_f(y_1) A_\mu(y_1) \gamma^\mu \psi_i(y_1) \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \int d^4y_1 \int d^4y_2 \bar{\psi}_f(y_2) A_{\mu_2}(y_2) \gamma^{\mu_2} S_F(y_2 - y_1) A_{\mu_1}(y_1) \gamma^{\mu_1} \psi_i(y_1) \right] \\
&\quad + \dots \\
&= \delta_{fi} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_{fi}^{(n)} \tag{3.66}
\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi}^{(n)} &= -ie^n \varepsilon_f \int d^4y_1 \dots \int d^4y_n \bar{\psi}_f(y_n) A_{\mu_n}(y_n) \gamma^{\mu_n} S_F(y_n - y_{n-1}) A_{\mu_{n-1}}(y_{n-1}) \gamma^{\mu_{n-1}} \dots \\
&\quad \times S_F(y_2 - y_1) A_{\mu_1}(y_1) \gamma^{\mu_1} \psi_i(y_1) \tag{3.67}
\end{aligned}$$

3.5.1 “Ordinary” scattering of electrons

- $\Psi_i(y)$ in this case at $y_0 \rightarrow -\infty$ reduces to a plane wave with positive energy.

In this case

$$\Psi_i(y) \rightarrow \psi_i^{(+E)}(y) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_-}} \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} u(p_-, s_-) \exp(-ip_- \cdot x) \quad \text{as } y_0 \rightarrow -\infty \quad (3.68)$$

an incoming electron with positive energy E_- and momentum p_- and spin s_-

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi}^{(n)} &= -ie^n \int d^4y_1 \dots \int d^4y_n \bar{\psi}_f^{(+E)}(y_n) A_{\mu_n}(y_n) \gamma^{\mu_n} S_F(y_n - y_{n-1}) A_{\mu_{n-1}}(y_{n-1}) \gamma^{\mu_{n-1}} \dots \\ &\quad \times S_F(y_2 - y_1) A_{\mu_1}(y_1) \gamma^{\mu_1} \psi_i^{(+E)}(y_1) \end{aligned} \quad (3.69)$$

In addition to ordinary scattering intermediate pair creation and pair annihilation are included in the series.

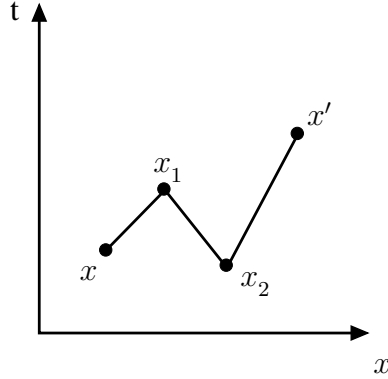


Figure 3.6: The electron at x_1 propagates backward in time from x_1 to x_2 . Physically a positron-electron pair is created at x_2 , the positron propagates forward in time where it annihilates with the initial electron at x_1 .

3.5.2 Pair production processes

- $\Psi_i(y)$ in this case at $y_0 \rightarrow +\infty$ reduces to a plane wave with negative energy.

The positron state at $t \rightarrow +\infty$ is described by a plane wave of negative energy. We use the notation

By hole theory a positron is an electron with negative energy, negative momentum and negative spin.

Now we need the plane wave propagating backward in time. There will be an exponential with a positive sign in the exponent

$$e^{(i+p_+\cdot y)}$$

expressing the property that it has negative energy and momentum. It also will involve

$$v(p_+, +1/2) = \omega^4(p_+) \quad \text{and} \quad v(p_+, -1/2) = \omega^3(p_+)$$

where ω^4 is the spinor corresponding to a negative energy electron with spin up and ω^3 a negative energy electron with spin down. By using the spinors $v(p, s)$ we take care of the fact that the spin of electrons with the negative energy is $-s$. Here s is the spin of the positron.

$$\psi_i^{(electron)}(-p_f, -s_f) = \text{Const. } v(p_f, s_f) \exp(+ip_f \cdot x) \quad (3.70)$$

$$\Psi_i(x) \rightarrow \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_-}} \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} v(p_+, s_+) e^{i+p_+\cdot y} \quad \text{as } y_0 \rightarrow \infty \quad (3.71)$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi}^{(n)} &= -ie^n \int d^4y_1 \dots \int d^4y_n \bar{\psi}_f^{(+E)}(y_n) A_{\mu_n}(y_n) \gamma^{\mu_n} S_F(y_n - y_{n-1}) A_{\mu_{n-1}}(y_{n-1}) \gamma^{\mu_{n-1}} \dots \\ &\quad \times S_F(y_2 - y_1) A_{\mu_1}(y_1) \gamma^{\mu_1} \psi_i(-E)(y_1) \end{aligned} \quad (3.72)$$

3.5.3 Pair annihilation processes

- $\Psi_i(y)$ in this case at $y_0 \rightarrow -\infty$ reduces to a plane wave with negative energy.

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi}^{(n)} &= +ie^n \int d^4y_1 \dots \int d^4y_n \bar{\psi}_f^{(-E)}(y_n) A_{\mu_n}(y_n) \gamma^{\mu_n} S_F(y_n - y_{n-1}) A_{\mu_{n-1}}(y_{n-1}) \gamma^{\mu_{n-1}} \dots \\ &\quad \times S_F(y_2 - y_1) A_{\mu_1}(y_1) \gamma^{\mu_1} \psi_i^{(+E)}(y_1) \end{aligned} \quad (3.73)$$

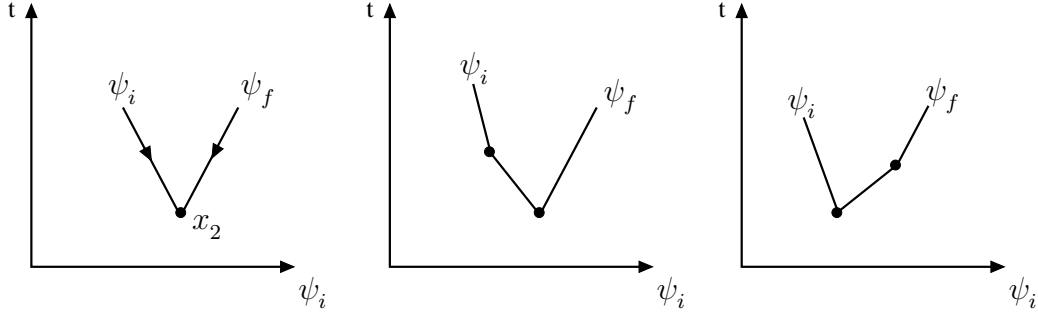


Figure 3.7:

3.5.4 Scattering of positrons

- $\Psi_i(y)$ in this case at $y_0 \rightarrow -\infty$ reduces to a plane wave with negative energy.

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_{fi}^{(n)} = & +ie^n \int d^4y_1 \dots \int d^4y_n \bar{\psi}_f^{(-E)}(y_n) A_{\mu_n}(y_n) \gamma^{\mu_n} S_F(y_n - y_{n-1}) A_{\mu_{n-1}}(y_{n-1}) \gamma^{\mu_{n-1}} \dots \\
 & \times S_F(y_2 - y_1) A_{\mu_1}(y_1) \gamma^{\mu_1} \psi_i^{(-E)}(y_1)
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{3.74}$$

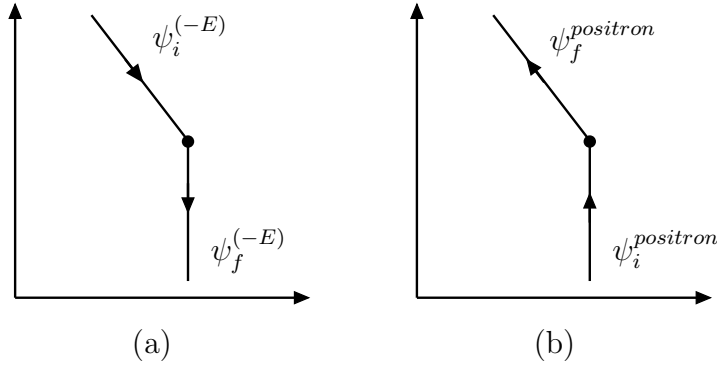


Figure 3.8: Lowest order positron scattering. (a) incoming negative energy electron $\psi_i^{(-E)}$ is scattered into an outgoing negative energy electron $\psi_f^{(-E)}$. (b) This corresponds to an incident positron $\psi_f^{positron}$ and emerging positron $\psi_i^{positron}$. This is the link between the calculational technique and the real physical picture of positron scattering.

Chapter 4

Scattering of an Electron off a Coulomb Potential

4.1 The Scattering Amplitude

We calculate the Rutherford scattering of an electron at a fixed Coulomb potential to lowest order of perturbation theory. The appropriate S-Matrix element is the first order term of (3.69)

$$S_{fi} = -ie \int d^4x \bar{\psi}_f(x) A_\mu \gamma^\mu(x) \psi_i(x) \quad (4.1)$$

$\psi_i(x)$ is given by the incoming plane wave of an electron with momentum p_i and s_i :

$$\psi_i(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_i V}} u(p_i, s_i) e^{-ip_i \cdot x} \quad (4.2)$$

$\bar{\psi}_f(x)$ is given by

$$\bar{\psi}_f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_f V}} \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) e^{ip_f \cdot x}. \quad (4.3)$$

Recall

$$\mathbf{E} = -\nabla A_0 - \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}, \quad \mathbf{B} = -\nabla \times \mathbf{A}$$

Choosing

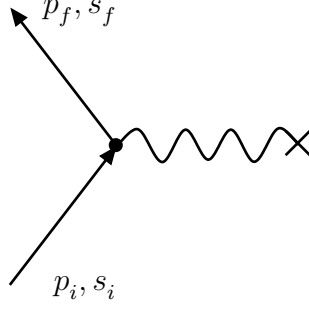


Figure 4.1:

$$A_0(x) = A_0(\mathbf{x}) = -\frac{Ze}{|\mathbf{x}|}, \quad \mathbf{A}(x) = 0. \quad (4.4)$$

corresponds to a Coulomb force generated by a static charge $-Ze$. With these assumptions the S-Matrix element becomes

$$S_{fi} = iZe^2 \frac{1}{V} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^0 u(p_i, s_i) \int d^4x e^{i(p_f - p_i) \cdot x} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}|}. \quad (4.5)$$

The integral over the time coordinate can be integrated

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx_0 e^{i(E_f - E_i)t} = 2\pi \delta(E_f - E_i) \quad (4.6)$$

The remaining integral is

$$A_0(\mathbf{x}) = -Ze \int d^3x \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}|} e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}}$$

where \mathbf{q} is the momentum transfer i.e. $\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{p}_f - \mathbf{p}_i$. This can be evaluated using integration by parts of Poisson's formula $\Delta(1/|\mathbf{x}|) = -4\pi\delta^3(\mathbf{x})$:

$$\begin{aligned} \int d^3x \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}|} e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} &= -\frac{1}{\mathbf{q}^2} \int d^3x \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}|} \Delta e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} \\ &= -\frac{1}{\mathbf{q}^2} \int d^3x \Delta \left(\frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}|} \right) e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} \\ &= -\frac{1}{\mathbf{q}^2} \int d^3x (-4\pi\delta^3(\mathbf{x})) e^{-i\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{x}} \\ &= \frac{4\pi}{\mathbf{q}^2} \end{aligned} \quad (4.7)$$

Thus the S -matrix element becomes

$$S_{fi} = iZe^2 \frac{1}{V} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^0 u(p_i, s_i) \frac{4\pi}{q^2} 2\pi\delta(E_f - E_i). \quad (4.8)$$

4.2 The Cross Section

A differential cross section σ is defined by the effective area of target particles.

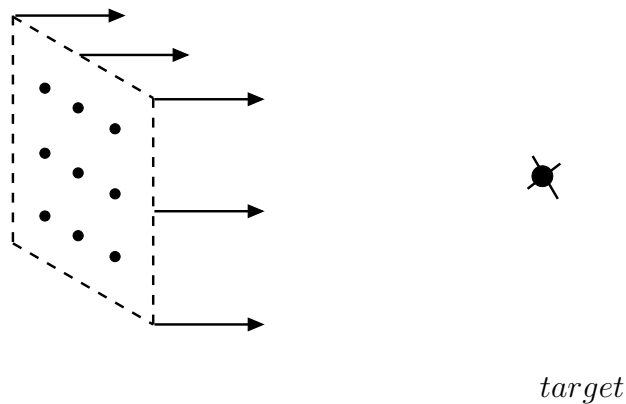


Figure 4.2: .

$$\text{Chance of hitting a Coulomb potential} = \frac{N_T \sigma}{A} \quad (4.9)$$

Let us say that there are N_I incoming particles. The number of scattering events is then

$$\text{number of events} = N_I \frac{N_T \sigma}{A} \quad (4.10)$$

so that the cross section is then expressed as

$$\sigma = \left(\frac{\text{number of events}}{N_I N_T} \right) A. \quad (4.11)$$

We wish to express the cross section in terms of the flux of the incoming beam,

$$\text{flux} = \rho v$$

where v is the velocity of the beam moving toward the stationary target. The number of particles in the beam N_T is equal to the density of the beam ρ times the volume of the beam, vtA . The cross section can therefore be written as

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sigma &= \frac{\text{number of events}/t}{(\rho vtA)N_T/t} A \\
 &= \frac{\text{number of events}/t}{\rho v} \cdot \frac{1}{N_T} \\
 &= \frac{\text{transition rate}}{\text{flux}} \cdot \frac{1}{N_T}
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.12}$$

$$dW = \frac{|S_{fi}|^2 dN_f}{T} \frac{1}{J} \tag{4.13}$$

dN_f is now determined.

4.3 Transition Probability Per Particle into Final States

Standing waves in a cubical box of volume $V = L^3$ require

$$\begin{aligned}
 p_x L &= n_x 2\pi, \\
 p_y L &= n_y 2\pi, \\
 p_z L &= n_z 2\pi,
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.14}$$

with integer number n_x, n_y, n_z . For large L the discrete set of \mathbf{p} -values approaches a continuum. The number of states is

$$\begin{aligned}
 dN &= dn_x dn_y dn_z \\
 &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} L^3 dp_x dp_y dp_z \\
 &= \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3} d^3 p.
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.15}$$

The transition probability per particle into these final states is

$$\begin{aligned}
dW &= |S_{fi}|^2 \frac{V d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3} \\
&= \frac{Z^2 (4\pi\alpha)^2 m_0^2}{E_i V} \frac{|\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^0 u(p_i, s_i)|^2}{|\mathbf{q}|^4} \frac{d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3 E_f} (2\pi\delta(E_f - E_i))^2 \quad (4.16)
\end{aligned}$$

4.4 Transition Probability Per Particle, Per Unit Time

We smear out the δ -function $2\pi\delta(E_f - E_i)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} dx_0 e^{i(E_f - E_i)x_0} &= \left[\frac{1}{i(E_f - E_i)} e^{i(E_f - E_i)x_0} \right]_{-T/2}^{T/2} \\
&= \frac{2 \sin(E_f - E_i)T/2}{E_f - E_i} \quad (4.17)
\end{aligned}$$

Thus we replace the square of the δ -function is replaced by

$$(2\pi\delta(E_f - E_i))^2 \Rightarrow 4 \frac{\sin^2(E_f - E_i)T/2}{(E_f - E_i)^2} \quad (4.18)$$

The area of this function is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} 4 \frac{\sin^2(E_f - E_i)T/2}{(E_f - E_i)^2} dE_f = 2\pi T. \quad (4.19)$$

Knowing that the “area” under the square of the δ is $\lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} 2\pi T$, we make the replacement

$$(2\pi\delta(E_f - E_i))^2 \rightarrow 2\pi T \delta(E_f - E_i). \quad (4.20)$$

Denote the rate R

$$dR = \frac{dW}{T} = \frac{Z^2 \alpha^2 m_0^2}{E_i V} \frac{|\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^0 u(p_i, s_i)|^2}{|\mathbf{q}|^4} \frac{d^3 p_f}{E_f} \delta(E_f - E_i) \quad (4.21)$$

4.5 Formula for Differential Cross Section

The scattering cross section can be defined as the transition probability per particle and per unit time divided by the incoming current of particles

$$J_{inc}^a(x) = \bar{\psi}_i(x)\gamma^a\psi_i(x) \quad (4.22)$$

Taking the spinors with spin polarisation in the z-direction we determine the current

$$\begin{aligned} J_{inc}^a &= \bar{\psi}_i(x)\gamma^a\psi_i(x) \\ &= \frac{m_0}{E_i V} \bar{u}(p_i, s_i)\gamma^3 u(p_i, s_i) \\ &= \frac{m_0}{E_i V} \frac{(E_i + m_0)}{2m_0} \left(1 \ 0 \ \frac{p_i}{E_i + m_0} \ 0 \right) \gamma^0 \gamma^3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \frac{p_i}{E_i + m_0} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{m_0}{E_i V} \frac{(E_i + m_0)}{2m_0} \left(1 \ 0 \ \frac{p_i}{E_i + m_0} \ 0 \right) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \sigma^3 \\ \sigma^3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \frac{p_i}{E_i + m_0} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{m_0}{E_i V} \frac{(E_i + m_0)}{2m_0} \left(1 \ 0 \ \frac{p_i}{E_i + m_0} \ 0 \right) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{p_i}{E_i + m_0} \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{p_i}{E_i} \frac{1}{V}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.23)$$

$$|\mathbf{J}_{inc}| = \frac{|\mathbf{v}_i|}{V}. \quad (4.24)$$

The differential cross section can now be determined

$$d\sigma = \frac{dR}{|\mathbf{J}_{inc}|} = \frac{4Z^2\alpha^2 m_0^2}{E_i V \frac{|\mathbf{v}_i|}{V}} \frac{|\bar{u}(p_f, s_f)\gamma^0 u(p_i, s_i)|^2}{|\mathbf{q}|^4} \frac{d\mathbf{p}_f^3}{E_f} \delta(E_f - E_i) \quad (4.25)$$

Use

$$d^3p_f = \mathbf{p}_f^2 d|\mathbf{p}_f| d\Omega_f \quad (4.26)$$

Then the differential cross section becomes

$$d\sigma = \frac{4Z^2\alpha^2m_0^2}{E_iV\frac{|v_i|}{V}} \frac{|\bar{u}(p_f, s_f)\gamma^0u(p_i, s_i)|^2}{|\mathbf{q}|^4} \frac{\mathbf{p}_f^2 d|\mathbf{p}_f|}{E_f} d\Omega_f \delta(E_f - E_i) \quad (4.27)$$

4.6 Averaging Over Spin

The differential cross section above can be applied to calculate the scattering of a particle with initial polarisation (s_i) to final polarisation (s_f).

First we give a simple example. From the relation

$$\bar{w}^r(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - \epsilon_r m_0) = 0.$$

we see that

$$\bar{w}_\gamma^r(p_i)\Lambda_{\gamma\delta}(p) = 0$$

for $r = 3, 4$, where

$$\Lambda_{\gamma\delta}(p) = \frac{-p_\mu\gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{s_i} u_\beta(p_i, s_i)\bar{u}_\beta(p_i, s_i) &= u_\beta(p_i, \uparrow)\bar{u}_\beta(p_i, \uparrow) + u_\beta(p_i, \downarrow)\bar{u}_\beta(p_i, \downarrow) \\ &= \sum_{r=1}^2 w_\beta^r(p_i)\bar{w}_\delta^r(p_i) \\ &= \sum_{r=1}^2 w_\beta^r(p_i) \sum_{\gamma=1}^4 \bar{w}_\gamma^r(p_i)\Lambda_{\gamma\delta}(p) \\ &= \sum_{\gamma, r=1}^4 \epsilon_r w_\beta^r(p_i)\bar{w}_\gamma^r(p_i)(\Lambda(p))_{\gamma\delta} \\ &= (\Lambda(p))_{\beta\delta} \end{aligned} \quad (4.28)$$

where we used the completeness relation

$$\sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r w_\beta^r(p_i) \bar{w}_\gamma^r(p_i) = \delta_{\beta\gamma}.$$

Using this result and similar considerations we now calculate the spin sum.

$$\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{\alpha,\sigma,\beta,\delta} \sum_{s_f} \bar{u}_\alpha(p_f, s_f) \gamma_{\alpha\beta}^0 \left(\sum_{s_f} u_\alpha(p_i, s_i) \bar{u}_\delta(p_i, s_i) \right) \gamma_{\delta\sigma}^0 u_\sigma(p_f, s_f) \\
&= \sum_{\alpha,\sigma} \sum_{s_f} \bar{u}_\alpha(p_f, s_f) \left(\gamma^0 \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^0 \right)_{\alpha\sigma} u_\sigma(p_f, s_f) \\
&= \sum_{\alpha,\sigma} \sum_{r=1}^2 \bar{w}_\alpha^r(p_f) \left(\gamma^0 \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^0 \right)_{\alpha\sigma} w_\sigma^r(p_f) \\
&= \sum_{\alpha,\sigma} \sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \bar{w}_\alpha^r(p_f) \left(\gamma^0 \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^0 \right)_{\alpha\sigma} \sum_{\tau=1}^4 \left(\frac{(p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right)_{\sigma\tau} w_\tau^r(p_f) \\
&= \sum_{\alpha,\sigma} \left(\gamma^0 \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^0 \right)_{\alpha\sigma} \left(\frac{(p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right)_{\sigma\alpha} \\
&= Tr \left[\gamma^0 \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^0 \frac{(p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right] \tag{4.29}
\end{aligned}$$

Using this the differential cross section can be written

$$\frac{d\bar{\sigma}}{d\Omega_f} = \frac{4Z^2 \alpha^2 m_0^2}{2|\mathbf{q}|^4} Tr \left[\gamma^0 \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^0 \frac{(p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right]. \tag{4.30}$$

4.7 Taking the Trace of the Product of Gamma Matrices in the Differential Cross Section

We first prove that the trace of an odd number of γ -matrices vanishes. To do this we use $(\gamma^5)^2 = I$ and $\gamma_\mu \gamma^5 + \gamma^5 \gamma_\mu = 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
Tr \gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu &= Tr \gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu \gamma^5 \gamma^5 \\
&= (-1)^n Tr \gamma^5 \gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu \gamma^5 \\
&= (-1)^n Tr \gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu \gamma^5 \gamma^5 \\
&= (-1)^n Tr \gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu \tag{4.31}
\end{aligned}$$

where in the third line we used the cyclic permutation of the trace. With this () reduces to

$$\frac{d\bar{\sigma}}{d\Omega_f} = \frac{4Z^2\alpha^2m_0^2}{2|\mathbf{q}|^4} \left[Tr(\gamma^0(p_i)_\mu\gamma^\mu\gamma^0(p_f)_\nu\gamma^\nu) + m_0^2Tr(\gamma^0)^2 \right]. \quad (4.32)$$

We have $Tr(\gamma^0)^2 = TrI = 4$. To evaluate the first trace we derive a couple of results: Firstly

$$\begin{aligned} a_\mu b_\nu Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu &= a_\mu b_\nu \frac{1}{2} Tr(\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu + \gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu) \\ &= a_\mu b_\nu \eta^{\mu\nu} TrI \\ &= 4a \cdot b. \end{aligned} \quad (4.33)$$

where we have used μ and ν are dummy variables in the first line. Secondly, starting with

$$\begin{aligned} a_\mu b_\nu c_\gamma d_\delta Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta &= 2a \cdot b c_\gamma d_\delta Tr\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta - b_\mu a_\nu c_\gamma d_\delta Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta \\ &= 2a \cdot b c_\gamma d_\delta Tr\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta - 2a \cdot c b_\mu d_\delta Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\delta \\ &\quad + b_\mu c_\nu a_\gamma d_\delta Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta \\ &= 2a \cdot b c_\gamma d_\delta Tr\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta - 2a \cdot c b_\mu d_\delta Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\delta \\ &\quad + 2a \cdot d b_\mu c_\nu Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu - b_\mu c_\nu d_\gamma a_\delta Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta \end{aligned}$$

then using the cyclic property of the trace we find

$$\begin{aligned} a_\mu b_\nu c_\gamma d_\delta Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\delta &= a \cdot b c_\mu d_\nu Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu - a \cdot c b_\mu d_\nu Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu \\ &\quad + a \cdot d b_\mu c_\nu Tr\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu \end{aligned} \quad (4.34)$$

Using the second result first with $a = c = (1, 0, 0, 0)$ we get

$$(p_i)_\mu (p_f)_\nu Tr(\gamma^0\gamma^\mu\gamma^0\gamma^\nu) = a \cdot p_i Tr - a \cdot a Tr + a \cdot p_f Tr$$

Now using the first result we have

$$\begin{aligned} (p_i)_\mu (p_f)_\nu Tr(\gamma^0\gamma^\mu\gamma^0\gamma^\nu) &= 4(a \cdot p_i)(a \cdot p_f) - (a \cdot a)4(p_i \cdot p_f) + 4(a \cdot p_f)(a \cdot p_i) \\ &= 4E_i E_f - 4(E_i E_f - \vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{p}_f) + 4E_i E_f \end{aligned} \quad (4.35)$$

4.8 Mott Scattering Formula

The $\delta(E_i - E_f)$ function of the cross section ensures energy conservation $E_i = E_f$, thus $E_i^2 = E_f^2$:

$$m_0^2 + \vec{p}_i^2 = m_0^2 + \vec{p}_f^2$$

implying

$$|\vec{p}_i| = |\vec{p}_f| = |\vec{p}|$$

The scalar product of initial and final momentum is the following function of the scattering angle θ

$$\begin{aligned} p_i \cdot p_f &= |\mathbf{p}|^2 \cos \theta \\ &= |\mathbf{p}|^2 \left(1 - 2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \right) \\ &= \beta^2 E^2 \left(1 - 2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \right) \end{aligned} \tag{4.36}$$

From this we have for the momentum transfer

$$\begin{aligned} |q| &= |p_f - p_i| \\ &= \sqrt{|p_f|^2 + |p_i|^2 - p_f \cdot p_i} \\ &= \sqrt{2p^2 - |p| \cos \theta} \\ &= 2|p| \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \end{aligned} \tag{4.37}$$

A simple exercise, left to the reader, gives us the well known Mott scattering formula

$$\frac{d\bar{\sigma}}{d\Omega_f} = \frac{Z^2 \alpha^2 (1 - \beta^2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2})}{4\beta^2 |\mathbf{p}|^2 \sin^4 \frac{\theta}{2}} \tag{4.38}$$

In the limit $\beta \rightarrow 0$ (small velocities) reduces to Rutherford's scattering formula

$$\frac{d\bar{\sigma}}{d\Omega_f} = \frac{Z^2 \alpha^2}{4\beta^2 |\mathbf{p}|^2 \sin^4 \frac{\theta}{2}} \tag{4.39}$$

Chapter 5

Scattering of an Electron off a Free Proton

In the last example we considered scattering off a central potential. Now we make our first step toward the derivation of Feynmann's rules by considering scattering off two free particles.

5.1 Inhomogeneous Wave Equation and Photon Propagator

In electromagnetism the invariance in A_μ comes about because the field strength $F_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu$ is left unchanged by the gauge transformations

$$A_\mu(x) \rightarrow A_\mu(x) + \partial_\mu \Lambda(x)$$

We wish to calculate the four-potential $A_\mu(x)$ produced by a source current $J^\nu(x)$ term,

$$\square A^\nu(x) - \partial^\mu \partial_\mu A^\nu(x) = 4\pi J^\nu(x) \tag{5.1}$$

We are free to choose the most convenient gauge for the calculation intended to make.

We will choose the Lorentz gauge

$$\partial_\mu A^\mu(x) = 0$$

In momentum space this reads

$$k^\mu A^\mu(k) = 0.$$

$$\square A^\nu(x) = 4\pi J^\nu(x) \quad (5.2)$$

The solution of the above equation may be systematically formulated using the appropriate Green's function which we call $D_F(x - y)$, the propagator for electromagnetism.

$$\square D_F(x - y)(x) = 4\pi\delta^4(x - y). \quad (5.3)$$

The Fourier-transformed propagator is defined by

$$D_F(x - y) = \int \frac{d^4q}{(2\pi)^4} \exp[-iq \cdot (x - y)] D_F(q) \quad (5.4)$$

Using

$$\delta^4(x - y) = \int \frac{d^4p}{(2\pi)^4} \exp[-iq \cdot (x - y)] \quad (5.5)$$

and making comparison we get

$$D_F(q) = -\frac{4\pi}{q^2} \quad (5.6)$$

The four-potential $A^\mu(x)$ solving (5.2) is

$$A^\mu(x) = \int d^4y D_F(x - y) J^\mu(y). \quad (5.7)$$

5.2 Potential of Proton Current

$$S_{fi} = -ie \int d^4x \bar{\psi}_f(x) \gamma_\mu A^\mu(x) \Psi_i(x) \quad (5.8)$$

At first order the four-potential $A^\mu(x)$ is the field produced by the proton to lowest order in α .

$$S_{fi} = -i \int d^4x d^4y \left[e \bar{\psi}_f(x) \gamma_\mu \psi_i(x) \right] D_F(x - y) J^\mu(y). \quad (5.9)$$

The term in the brackets represents the current of the electron. As the electron and proton play equivalent roles in the scattering process, the proton's current should be of the same form as the electronic current. Therefore we make the replacement

$$J^\mu(y) \rightarrow e_p \bar{\psi}_f^p(y) \gamma^\mu \psi_i^p(y) \quad (5.10)$$

where $\bar{\psi}_f^p(y)$ and $\psi_i^p(y)$ have the same form as the electron wavefunctions

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_i^p(y) &= \sqrt{\frac{M_0}{E_i^p V}} u(P_i, S_i) \exp(-iP_i \cdot y) \\ \psi_f^p(y) &= \sqrt{\frac{M_0}{E_f^p V}} u(P_f, S_f) \exp(-iP_f \cdot y) \end{aligned} \quad (5.11)$$

where P_i and P_f denote the four-momentum of the proton, S_i, S_f and E_i^p, E_f^p denote its spin and energy respectively. M_0 is the proton's rest mass. The proton's current is then

$$J_{fi}^\mu(y) = -\sqrt{\frac{M_0^2}{E_f^p E_i^p}} \frac{e}{V} \exp[i(P_f - P_i) \cdot y] \bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma^\mu u(P_i, S_i). \quad (5.12)$$

Inserting this into the expression for the S-matrix gives

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi} &= +i \frac{e^2}{V^2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \sqrt{\frac{M_0^2}{E_f^p E_i^p}} [\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma_\mu u(p_i, s_i)] \\ &\times \int d^4x d^4y \frac{d^4q}{(2\pi)^4} \exp[-iq \cdot (x - y)] \exp[i(p_f - p_i) \cdot x] \exp[i(P_f - P_i) \cdot x] \\ &\times \left(\frac{-4\pi}{q^2 + i\epsilon} \right) [\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma_\mu u(P_i, S_i)] \end{aligned} \quad (5.13)$$

5.3 Conservation of Four-Momentum

The x - and y -integrations give

$$\begin{aligned} \int d^4x \exp(i(p_f - p_i - q) \cdot x) &= (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f - p_i - q) \\ \int d^4y \exp(i(p_f - p_i - q) \cdot y) &= (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f - P_i - q) \end{aligned} \quad (5.14)$$

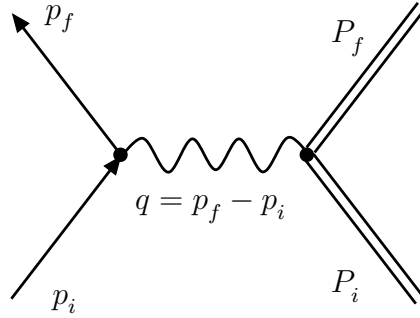


Figure 5.1: Lowest order electron-proton scattering.

The integration over q is then readily done:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \int \frac{d^4q}{(2\pi)^4} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f - p_i - q) (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f - P_i - q) \left[-\frac{4\pi}{q^2 + i\epsilon} \right] \\
 &= (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f - P_i + p_f - p_i) \left[-\frac{4\pi}{(p_f - p_i)^2 + i\epsilon} \right] \quad (5.15)
 \end{aligned}$$

5.4 Remarks on the Form of the S-matrix Element

Here we display properties of S-matrix element that are a first step toward “deriving” the Feynmann rules for QED. The total S-matrix element the reads

$$S_{fi} = i(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f - P_i + p_f - p_i) M_{fi} \frac{1}{V^2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \sqrt{\frac{M_0^2}{E_f^p E_i^p}} \quad (5.16)$$

where

$$M_{fi} = [\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) (-ie\gamma_\mu) u(p_i, s_i)] \frac{-4\pi \eta^{\mu\nu}}{(p_f - p_i)^2 + i\epsilon} [\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) (-ie_p \gamma_\mu) u(P_i, S_i)] \quad (5.17)$$

This describes the lowest order contribution. This is put in diagrammatic form in fig (??). The wavy line represents the virtual photon being exchanged between the electron and proton. The four momentum of the photon is

$$q = p_f - p_i = P_f - P_i \quad (5.18)$$

- The following factor represents the amplitude for the propagation of a photon with momentum q :

$$\frac{-4\pi \eta^{\mu\nu}}{q^2 + i\epsilon} \quad (5.19)$$

- There is a factor of $-ie\gamma_\mu$ for every vertex.
- These act between spinors $u(p, s)$ describing the free ingoing and outgoing Dirac particles.
- There is a four dimensional δ -function, ensuring conservation of total energy and momentum in the scattering process.

5.5 The Scattering Cross Section

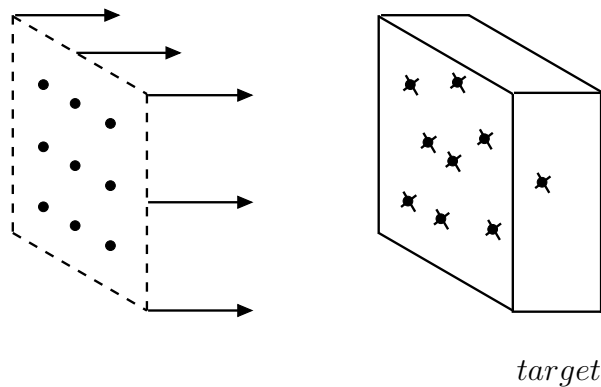


Figure 5.2: .

We divide $|S_{fi}|^2$ by the time interval and the space volume of the reaction (Dirac waves normalised so that there is one particle per unit volume)

$$W_{fi} = \frac{|S_{fi}|^2}{VT} \quad (5.20)$$

Now we come to calculating the cross section. As in section we have to consider the square of the δ^4 -function

$$(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f + P_f - p_i - P_i) = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty, V \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \int_V d^3\mathbf{x} \exp \left[ix \cdot (p_f + P_f - p_i - P_i) \right] \quad (5.21)$$

$$\left[(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f + P_f - p_i - P_i) \right]^2 \rightarrow TV (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f + P_f - p_i - P_i) \quad (5.22)$$

To obtain the transition rate to a group of final states with momenta in the intervals $f = 1, 2$, we multiply by the number of these states which is

$$\frac{V d^3 \mathbf{P}_1}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{V d^3 \mathbf{P}_2}{(2\pi)^3} \quad (5.23)$$

number of target particles per unit volume = $1/V$

Combining these results with (), we obtain the required formula for the differential cross section

$$\begin{aligned} d\sigma &= V^2 \frac{d^3 \mathbf{p}_f}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{d^3 \mathbf{P}_f}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{J}_{\text{inc}}|} \frac{1}{1/V} W_{fi} \\ &= \end{aligned} \quad (5.24)$$

5.6 Lorentz Invariance

Each particle leaving the scattering process contributes a factor

$$\frac{m_0}{E_f} \frac{d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3} \quad (5.25)$$

to the cross section. Consider

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d^4 p \delta(p^2 - m_0^2) \Theta(p_0) &= \int_0^{\infty} dp_0 \delta(p_0^2 - \mathbf{p}^2 - m_0^2) d^3 p \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} dp_0 \delta(p_0^2 - E^2) d^3 p \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} dp_0 \delta[(p_0 - E)(p_0 + E)] d^3 p \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} dp_0 \delta[2E(p_0 - E)] d^3 p \\ &= \frac{d^3 p}{2E} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\Theta(p_0) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } p_0 > 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } p_0 < 0 \end{cases}$$

This step function is obviously Lorentz invariant since Lorentz transformations always transform timelike four vectors into timelike four vectors. Thus we have established that $d^3p/2E$ is a Lorentz-invariant factor.

Now we consider the factor

$$\frac{m_0 M_0}{E_i E_i^P} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{J}_{inc}|V},$$

$$|\mathbf{J}_{inc}| = \frac{1}{V} |\mathbf{v}_i - \mathbf{V}_i| \tag{5.26}$$

$$\mathbf{v}_i = \frac{\mathbf{p}_i}{E_i}, \quad \mathbf{V}_i = \frac{\mathbf{P}_i}{E_i^P}$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{m_0 M_0}{E_i E_i^P} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{J}_{inc}|V} &= \frac{m_0 M_0}{E_i E_i^P |\mathbf{v}_i - \mathbf{V}_i|} \\ &= \frac{m_0 M_0}{E_i E_i^P \sqrt{\mathbf{v}_i^2 + \mathbf{V}_i^2 - 2\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{V}_i}} \\ &= \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{\mathbf{p}_i^2 E_i^{P2} + \mathbf{P}_i^2 E_i^2 - 2\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i E_i E_i^P}} \end{aligned} \tag{5.27}$$

We prove that for collinear collisions that this is equivalent to the Lorentz invariant scalar

$$\frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{(p_i \cdot P_i)^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}},$$

because

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{(p_i \cdot P_i)^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}} &= \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{(E_i E_i^P - \mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i)^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}} \\
&= \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{E_i^2 E_i^{P^2} - 2E_i E_i^P \mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i + (\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i)^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}} \\
&= \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{(m_0^2 + \mathbf{p}_i^2)(M_0^2 + \mathbf{P}_i^2) - 2E_i E_i^P \mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i + (\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i)^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}} \\
&= \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{\mathbf{p}_i^2 E_i^{P^2} + m_0^2 \mathbf{P}_i^2 - 2E_i E_i^P \mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i + (\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i)^2}} \tag{5.28}
\end{aligned}$$

As the velocity vectors are collinear we have that $(\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i)^2 = \mathbf{p}_i^2 \mathbf{P}_i^2$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{(p_i \cdot P_i)^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}} &= \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{\mathbf{p}_i^2 E_i^{P^2} + m_0^2 \mathbf{P}_i^2 - 2E_i E_i^P \mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i + \mathbf{p}_i^2 \mathbf{P}_i^2}} \\
&= \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{\mathbf{p}_i^2 E_i^{P^2} + \mathbf{P}_i^2 E_i^2 - 2E_i E_i^P \mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{P}_i}} \tag{5.29}
\end{aligned}$$

We can use this Lorentz-invariant flux factor to write the cross section in a invariant form

$$d\sigma = \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{(p_i \cdot P_i)^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}} |M_{fi}|^2 (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f - P_i + p_f - p_i) \frac{m_0 d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3 E_f} \frac{M_0 d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3 E_f^P}. \tag{5.30}$$

5.7 Averaging over Spin

The squared invariant matrix element averaged over initial and final spin is

$$\overline{|M_{fi}|^2} = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{S_f, S_i, s_f, s_i} \left| \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\mu u(p_i, s_i) \frac{e e_p (4\pi)}{q^2 + i\epsilon} \bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma_\mu u(P_i, S_i) \right|^2 \tag{5.31}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{S_f, S_i, s_f, s_i} \left| [\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\mu u(p_i, s_i)] [\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma_\mu u(P_i, S_i)] \right|^2 \\
&= \sum_{S_f, S_i, s_f, s_i} [\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\mu u(p_i, s_i)] [\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma_\mu u(P_i, S_i)] \\
& \quad [\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\nu u(p_i, s_i)]^* [\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma_\nu u(P_i, S_i)]^* \\
&= \sum_{s_f, s_i} [\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\mu u(p_i, s_i)] [\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\nu u(p_i, s_i)]^* \\
& \quad \sum_{S_f, S_i} [\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma^\mu u(P_i, S_i)] [\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma^\nu u(P_i, S_i)]^* \tag{5.32}
\end{aligned}$$

At this point the reader should go through section A.10. The answer according to (A.66) is

$$Tr \left[\frac{p_{f\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^\mu \frac{p_{i\beta} \gamma^\beta + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^\nu \right] Tr \left[\frac{P_{f\gamma} \gamma^\gamma + M_0}{2M_0} \gamma_\mu \frac{P_{i\delta} \gamma^\delta + M_0}{2M_0} \gamma_\nu \right] \tag{5.33}$$

$$|\overline{M_{fi}}|^2 = \frac{e^2 e_p^2 (4\pi)^2}{q^4} L^{\mu\nu} H_{\mu\nu} \tag{5.34}$$

where we have introduced the lepton tensor $L^{\mu\nu}$ and the hadron tensor $H_{\mu\nu}$, defined as

$$L^{\mu\nu} = Tr \left[\frac{p_{f\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^\mu \frac{p_{i\beta} \gamma^\beta + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^\nu \right] \tag{5.35}$$

and

$$H_{\mu\nu} = Tr \left[\frac{P_{f\gamma} \gamma^\gamma + M_0}{2M_0} \gamma_\mu \frac{P_{i\delta} \gamma^\delta + M_0}{2M_0} \gamma_\nu \right] \tag{5.36}$$

Using methods already introduced in the previous section on Coulomb scattering, we can easily evaluate the trace in the lepton tensor $L^{\mu\nu}$ to obtain:

$$L^{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{m_0^2} \left[p_f^\mu p_i^\nu + p_i^\mu p_f^\nu - \eta^{\mu\nu} (p_f \cdot p_i - m_0^2) \right] \tag{5.37}$$

The Hadron trace has the same structure, we just replace small letters by capitals and lower the spacetime indices.

5.8 Differential Cross Section in Rest Frame of Proton

The calculation of $\overline{|M_{fi}|^2}$ which we leave to the reader results in

$$\overline{|M_{fi}|^2} = \frac{e^2 e_p^2 (4\pi)^2}{4m_0^2 M_0^2 (q^2)^2} \left[(p_i \cdot P_i)(p_f \cdot P_f) + (p_i \cdot P_f)(p_f \cdot P_i) - (p_i \cdot p_f)M_0^2 - (P_i \cdot P_f)m^2 + 2m_0^2 M_0^2 \right]. \quad (5.38)$$

Let us work in the rest frame of the proton. We define

$$\begin{aligned} p_f &= (E', \mathbf{p}') =: p' \\ p_f &= (E, \mathbf{p}) =: p \\ P_i &= (M_0, 0) \end{aligned} \quad (5.39)$$

We calculate the differential cross section for electron scattering into a solid angle $d\Omega'$ centered around the scattering angle θ . Thus we will integrate the differential cross section over all momentum variable except for the direction of \mathbf{p}_f . First we will want to write down the spin averaged differential cross section in the proton rest system. The invariant flux factor reduces to

$$\frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{(p_i \cdot P_i) - m_0^2 M_0^2}} = \frac{m_0 M_0}{\sqrt{E^2 M_0^2 - m_0^2 M_0^2}} = \frac{m_0}{|\mathbf{p}|} \quad (5.40)$$

We will use

$$\frac{M_0 d^3 P_f}{(2\pi)^3 E_f^p} = \frac{2M_0}{(2\pi)^3} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d^4 P_f \delta(P_f^2 - M_0^2) \Theta(P_f^0).$$

The spin averaged differential cross section $d\bar{\sigma}$ is then

$$\begin{aligned} d\bar{\sigma} &= \frac{m_0}{|\mathbf{p}|} \overline{|M_{fi}|^2} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f + p' - P_i - p) \\ &\times \frac{m_0}{(2\pi)^3} |\mathbf{p}'| dE' d\Omega' \times \frac{2M_0}{(2\pi)^3} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d^4 P_f \delta(P_f^2 - M_0^2) \Theta(P_f^0) \end{aligned} \quad (5.41)$$

Now integrating over dE' and $d^3 P_f$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d\bar{\sigma}}{d\Omega'} &= \int dE' |\mathbf{p}'| E' (d\bar{\sigma}) \\
&= \frac{m_0^2 M_0}{|\mathbf{p}| 2\pi^2} \int dE' |\mathbf{p}'| \overline{|M_{fi}|^2} \delta((p' - P_i - p)^2 - M_0^2) \Theta(P_i^0 + E - E') \\
&= \frac{m_0^2 M_0}{|\mathbf{p}| 2\pi^2} \int_{m_0}^{M_0+E} dE' |\mathbf{p}'| \overline{|M_{fi}|^2} \delta(2m_0^2 - 2(E' - E) - 2E'E 2|\mathbf{p}||\mathbf{p}'| \cos \theta)
\end{aligned} \tag{5.42}$$

where the upper limit in the integral comes from the step function and the lower from the fact that E' cannot be less than m_0 . Furthermore, the argument of the delta function has been expressed in terms of the kinematical variables of the laboratory frame. The remaining integral over E' can be performed using

$$\delta(f(x)) = \sum_k \frac{\delta(x - x_k)}{\left| \frac{df}{dx} \right|_{x_k}}$$

x_i being the roots of $f(x)$ inside the range of integration. We get

$$\frac{d\bar{\sigma}}{d\Omega'} = \frac{m_0^2 M_0}{4\pi^2} \frac{|\mathbf{p}'| \overline{|M_{fi}|^2}}{|\mathbf{p}| M_0 + E - |\mathbf{p}|(E'/|\mathbf{p}'|) \cos \theta} \tag{5.43}$$

where we have used $d|\mathbf{p}'|/dE' = E'/|\mathbf{p}'|$ and we have for E'

$$E'(M_0 + E) - |\mathbf{p}||\mathbf{p}'| \cos \theta = EM_0 + m_0^2 \tag{5.44}$$

For given scattering angle θ the final energy E' of the electrons can be determined as a function of E and θ . The resulting E' and the corresponding $|\mathbf{p}'| = E'^2 - m_0^2$ have to be inserted into (5.43).

Chapter 6

Scattering of Identical Fermions

We can take over many aspects of electron-proton scattering. But now because the two particles are of the same type there is no way to tell which of the two emerging electrons was the “incident” and which was the “target” particle. This is taken into account by adding the amplitudes for both processes but including a change of sign since we are exchanging two identical fermions. The resulting total amplitude is then

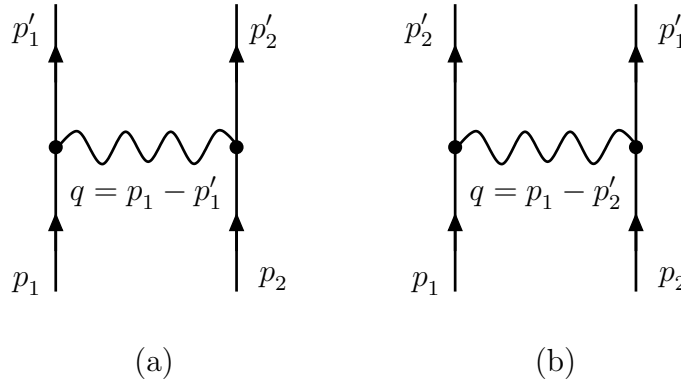


Figure 6.1:

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_{fi} = & -\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_1 E_2}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E'_1 E'_2}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_1 + p_2 - p'_1 - p'_2) \\
 & \times \left\{ + [\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1)(-ie\gamma_\mu)u(p_1, s_1)] \frac{i4\pi}{(p_1 - p'_1)^2 + i\epsilon} [\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2)(-ie\gamma_\mu)u(p_2, s_2)] \right. \\
 & \left. - [\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2)(-ie\gamma_\mu)u(p_1, s_1)] \frac{i4\pi}{(p_1 - p'_2)^2 + i\epsilon} [\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1)(-ie\gamma_\mu)u(p_2, s_2)] \right\}
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.1}$$

6.1 Averaging over Spin

The squared invariant matrix element averaged over initial and final spin is

$$\begin{aligned}
& \overline{|M_{fi}|^2} \\
= & e^4 (4\pi)^2 \frac{1}{4} \sum_{s'_1, s_1} \sum_{s'_2, s_2} \left| \bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\mu u(p_1, s_1) \frac{1}{(p_1 - p'_1)^2} \bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma^\mu u(p_2, s_2) \right. \\
& \left. - \bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma_\mu u(p_1, s_1) \frac{1}{(p_1 - p'_2)^2} \bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma^\mu u(p_2, s_2) \right|^2 \quad (6.2)
\end{aligned}$$

We gain familiarity with calculating spin averaging, the reader will be left to put together the results to obtain the final answer. Consider the mod-squared terms in the square $|\dots|^2$. Take the first such term:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{s'_1, s_1} \sum_{s'_2, s_2} (\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\mu u(p_1, s_1)) (\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma^\mu u(p_2, s_2)) \\
& \quad \times (\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\nu u(p_1, s_1))^* (\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma^\nu u(p_2, s_2))^* \\
= & \left[\sum_{s'_1, s_1} (\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\mu u(p_1, s_1)) (\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\nu u(p_1, s_1))^* \right] \\
& \quad \times \left[\sum_{s'_2, s_2} (\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma_\mu u(p_2, s_2)) (\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma^\nu u(p_2, s_2))^* \right] \quad (6.3)
\end{aligned}$$

It is sufficient to consider just the first sum over s'_1, s_1 , since the second term s'_2, s_2 has the same structure. The reader should see section A.10 on how to turn this into the following trace

$$Tr \left[\gamma_\mu \frac{p_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_\nu \frac{p'_{1\beta} \gamma^\beta + m_0}{2m_0} \right]. \quad (6.4)$$

Now we consider the more complicated mixed terms in the square $|\dots|^2$. The first of these is

$$\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{s'_1, s_1} \sum_{s'_2, s_2} [(\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\mu u(p_1, s_1)) (\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma^\mu u(p_2, s_2))] \\
& \quad \times [(\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma_\nu u(p_1, s_1)) (\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma^\nu u(p_2, s_2))]^* \\
& \sum_{s'_1, s_1} \sum_{s'_2, s_2} (\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\mu u(p_1, s_1)) (\bar{u}(p_1, s_1) \gamma_\nu u(p'_2, s'_2)) \\
& \quad \times (\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma_\mu u(p_2, s_2)) (\bar{u}(p_2, s_2) \gamma_\nu u(p'_1, s'_1)) \\
= & \sum_{s'_1} \sum_{s'_2} \left(\bar{u}(p'_1, s'_1) \gamma_\mu \frac{p_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_\nu u(p'_2, s'_2) \right) \\
& \quad \times \left(\bar{u}(p'_2, s'_2) \gamma_\mu \frac{p_{2\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_\nu u(p'_1, s'_1) \right) \tag{6.5}
\end{aligned}$$

where we have used the identity

$$\sum_{s_1} u_\alpha(p_1, s_1) \bar{u}_\beta(p_1, s_1) = \left(\frac{p_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2m_0} \right)_{\alpha\beta}$$

We use this identity another two times to obtain the final result

$$Tr \left[\gamma_\mu \frac{p_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_\nu \frac{p'_{2\beta} \gamma^\beta + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^\mu \frac{p_{2\gamma} \gamma^\gamma + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma^\nu \frac{p'_{1\delta} \gamma^\delta + m_0}{2m_0} \right]. \tag{6.6}$$

In section A.1 we provide theorems on the trace of γ -matrices sufficient for the reader to evaluate the above expressions.

Chapter 7

Electron-Positron Scattering

7.1 Scattering of an Positron off a Coulomb Potential

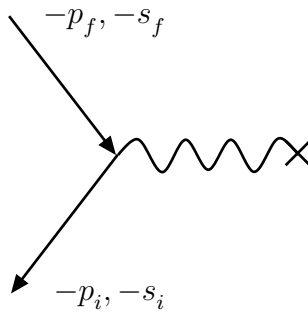


Figure 7.1: The incoming positron with momentum p_i and spin s_i is described by an outgoing electron with negative energy, with momentum $-p_i$ and spin $-s_i$. Similarly for the outgoing positron.

$$S_{fi} = -iZe^2 \frac{1}{V} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \bar{v}(p_i, s_i) \gamma^0 v(p_f, s_f) \int d^4x e^{i(p_f - p_i) \cdot x} \frac{1}{|x|}. \quad (7.1)$$

7.2 Electron-Positron Scattering Amplitude

Make the replacements

an incoming electron spinor $u(p_i, s_i) \rightarrow$ an outgoing positron spinor $\bar{v}(p_f, s_f)$

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi}(dir.) &= -\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_1 E_2'}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_1' E_2}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_1 + \bar{p}_2' - p_1' - \bar{p}_2) \\
&\times [\bar{u}(p_1', s_1') (-ie\gamma_\mu) u(p_1, s_1)] \frac{i4\pi}{(p_1 - p_1')^2 + i\epsilon} [\bar{v}(\bar{p}_2, \bar{s}_2) (-i(-e)\gamma_\mu) v(p_2', s_2')]
\end{aligned} \tag{7.2}$$

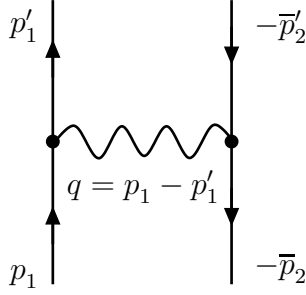


Figure 7.2:

The exchange amplitude

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi}(exch.) &= \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_1 E_2}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_1' E_2'}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_1 + \bar{p}_2' - p_1' - \bar{p}_2) \\
&\times [\bar{v}(\bar{p}_2, \bar{s}_2) (-i(-e)\gamma_\mu) u(p_1, s_1)] \frac{i4\pi}{(p_1 - p_1')^2 + i\epsilon} [\bar{u}(p_1', s_1') (-ie\gamma_\mu) u(\bar{p}_2', \bar{s}_2')]
\end{aligned} \tag{7.3}$$

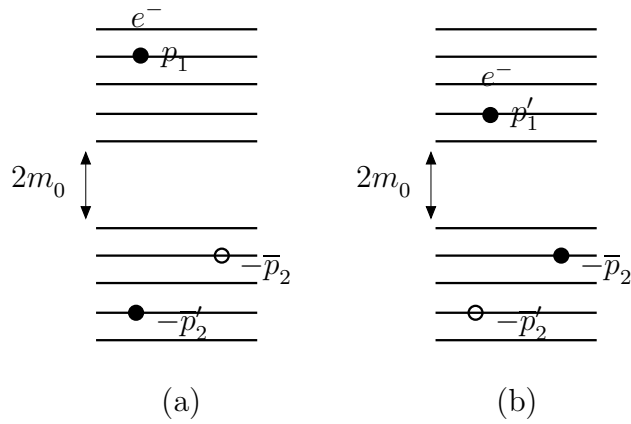


Figure 7.3: (a) The initial state. (b) The final state.

The exclusion principle requires that antisymmetric combinations of amplitudes be chosen for processes which differ only by an exchange of particles. In the final state, fig (??), has to be antisymmetric with respect to the exchange $p'_1 \leftrightarrow -\bar{p}_2$

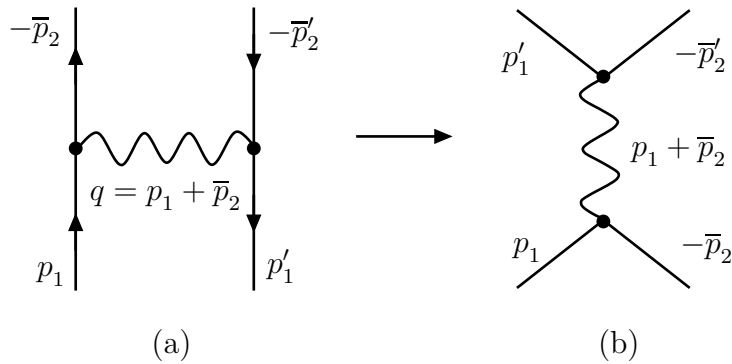


Figure 7.4: (a) . (b) The exchange graph is usually written this way.

7.3 Remarks on the Form of the S -Matrix element

7.4 Crossing Symmetry

The squared invariant matrix element for electron-positron scattering can be obtained from the squared invariant matrix element for electron-electron scattering by making the following substitutions of four-momenta

$$\begin{aligned}
 p_1 &\rightarrow p_1 \\
 p'_1 &\rightarrow p'_1 \\
 p_2 &\rightarrow -\bar{p}'_2 \\
 p'_2 &\rightarrow -\bar{p}_2.
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{7.4}$$

Chapter 8

Scattering of Polarised Dirac Particles

s^μ is a Lorentz vector which is properly defined in the rest system of the particle where it reduces to a spacial unit vector

$$(s^\mu)_{RS} = (0, \mathbf{s}'). \quad (8.1)$$

We wish to obtain the components of s^μ in a frame in which the particle moves with momentum \mathbf{p} . What is the Lorentz transformation formula os an aritrary four-vecto a^μ for when \mathbf{v} is not parallel to the x -axis? Consider

$$a^{0'} = \gamma (a^0 - \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{a}), \quad \mathbf{a}' = \mathbf{a} + \left(\frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{a}}{v^2} (\gamma - 1) - \gamma a^0 \right) \mathbf{v} \quad (8.2)$$

where

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \mathbf{v}^2}}.$$

Specialising to $\mathbf{v} = (v, 0, 0)$ we find

$$a^{0'} = \gamma (a^0 - va_x), \quad (8.3)$$

$$(a'_x, a'_y, a'_z) = (a_x, a_y, a_z) - \left(\frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{a}}{v^2} (1 - \gamma) - \gamma a_t \right) (v, 0, 0) \quad (8.4)$$

which reads separately

$$a'_t = \gamma(a_t - va_x), \quad a'_x = \gamma(a_x - va_t), \quad a'_y = a_y, \quad a'_z = a_z \quad (8.5)$$

We want the inverse of this transformation which is easily obtained by making the replacement $\mathbf{v} \rightarrow -\mathbf{v}$. We have that $s^{0'} = 0$. We obtain for s^μ ,

$$s^\mu = \left[\gamma \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{s}', \quad \mathbf{s}' + \frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{s}'}{v^2} (\gamma - 1) \mathbf{v} \right] \quad (8.6)$$

We use the following:

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{E}, \quad (8.7)$$

$$E/\gamma = m_0, \quad (8.8)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \mathbf{p}^2/E^2}} \\ &= \frac{E}{\sqrt{E^2 - \mathbf{p}^2}} = \frac{E}{m_0}, \end{aligned} \quad (8.9)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\gamma - 1}{E^2 - \mathbf{p}^2} &= \frac{E/m_0 - 1}{(E + m_0)(E - m_0)} \\ &= \frac{1}{m_0(E + m_0)}, \end{aligned} \quad (8.10)$$

so that (8.6) finally becomes

$$s^\mu = \left[\frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{s}'}{m_0}, \quad \mathbf{s}' + \frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{s}'}{m_0(E + m_0)} \mathbf{p} \right] \quad (8.11)$$

Because of the Lorentz invariance of the four-dimensional scalar product it follows

$$s_\mu s^\mu = (s_\mu)_{RS} (s^\mu)_{RS} = -\mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{s} = -1 \quad (8.12)$$

and

$$p^\mu s_\mu = (p^\mu)_{RS}(s_\mu)_{RS} = (m_0, 0, 0, 0) \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -s_x \\ -s_y \\ -s_z \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (8.13)$$

So we have the normalisation and orthogonality relations

$$s^2 = -1, \quad p \cdot s = 0. \quad (8.14)$$

We will specialise to helicity states, namely states where the spin points in the direction (or opposite direction) of the momentum:

$$s'_\lambda = \lambda \frac{\mathbf{p}}{|\mathbf{p}|}, \quad \text{where } \lambda = \pm 1. \quad (8.15)$$

Substituting this into (8.11) leads to the spin four-vector

$$s^\mu = \lambda \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{\mathbf{p}}{|\mathbf{p}|} + \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{m_0(E + m_0)} \frac{\mathbf{p}}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) = \lambda \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{E}{m_0} \frac{\mathbf{p}}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) \quad (8.16)$$

After this preliminar work we now look the cross section for Coulomb scattering.

8.1 Polarised Electron Scattering of a Coulomb Potential

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}(s_i, s_f) = \frac{4Z^4 \alpha^2 m_0^2}{|q|^4} |\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^0 u(p_i, s_i)|^2 \quad (8.17)$$

We introduce auxiliary summations over the spin orientations s_i and s_f using the spin projection operator $\Sigma(s)$ which suppresses the “wrong” spin state $u(p, -s)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}(s_i, s_f) &= \frac{4Z^4 \alpha^2 m_0^2}{|q|^4} \left(\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^0 u(p_i, s_i) \right) \left(u^\dagger(p_i, s_i) \gamma_0^\dagger \gamma_0^\dagger u(p_f, s_f) \right) \\ &= \frac{4Z^4 \alpha^2 m_0^2}{|q|^4} \sum_{s'_i, s'_f} \left(\bar{u}(p_f, s'_f) \gamma^0 \hat{\Sigma}(s_i) u(p_i, s'_i) \right) \left(\bar{u}(p_i, s'_i) \gamma^0 \hat{\Sigma}(s_f) u(p_f, s'_f) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (8.18)$$

The same calculation as in (4.29) but with the replacement $\gamma_{\alpha\beta}^0 \rightarrow \sum_{\delta=1}^4 \gamma_{\alpha\delta}^0 (\hat{\Sigma})_{\delta\beta}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}(s_i, s_f) &= \frac{4Z^4\alpha^2m_0^2}{|q|^4} Tr \left[\gamma_0 \hat{\Sigma}(s_i) \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_0 \hat{\Sigma}(s_f) \frac{(p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right] \\
&= \frac{4Z^4\alpha^2m_0^2}{|q|^4} Tr \left[\gamma_0 \frac{1 + \gamma_5 s_i^\sigma \gamma_\sigma}{2} \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_0 \frac{1 + \gamma_5 s_f^\delta \gamma_\delta}{2} \frac{(p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right]
\end{aligned} \tag{8.19}$$

8.2 When the Incoming Beam is Unpolarised

Before examining the above we warm up by looking at when the scattering process in which the incoming beam is unpolarised, and ask if polarisation of the scattered particle takes place. The above cross section is then replaced by

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}(s_i, s_f) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{4Z^4\alpha^2m_0^2}{|q|^4} Tr \left[\gamma_0 \frac{1 + \gamma_5 s_i^\sigma \gamma_\sigma}{2} \frac{(p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_0 \frac{(p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right] \tag{8.20}$$

The factor 1/2 comes from averaging over the initial spins.

Expanding (8.20) we find the traces

$$Tr\gamma_0\gamma_5\gamma_\sigma\gamma_0, \quad Tr\gamma_0\gamma_5\gamma_\sigma\gamma_\mu\gamma_0\gamma_\nu, \quad Tr\gamma_0\gamma_5\gamma_\sigma\gamma_\mu\gamma_0, \quad \text{and} \quad Tr\gamma_0\gamma_5\gamma_\sigma\gamma_0\gamma_\nu.$$

It is easily seen this reduces to evaluating

$$Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\sigma, \quad Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\sigma\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu, \quad \text{and} \quad Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\sigma\gamma_\mu.$$

The first two obviously vanish as the trace of the product of γ_5 and an odd number of γ matrices is zero

$$Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu = (-1)^n Tr\gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu \gamma_5 = (-1)^n Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\mu \dots \gamma_\nu$$

where we first used $\gamma_5\gamma_\mu = \gamma_\mu\gamma_5$ and then the cyclic property of the trace. We consider the last trace. Say first that $\mu = \nu$ then

$$Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu = Tr\gamma_5(\gamma_\mu)^2 = \eta^{\mu\mu} Tr\gamma_5. \tag{8.21}$$

As $\gamma^5\gamma^\mu + \gamma^\mu\gamma^5 = 0$ and thus in particular $\gamma^0\gamma^5 = -\gamma^5\gamma^0$ we get

$$\begin{aligned}
Tr\gamma_5 &= Tr\gamma_5(\gamma^0)^2 \\
&= -Tr\gamma^0\gamma_5\gamma^0 \\
&= -Tr\gamma_5(\gamma^0)^2 \\
&= -Tr\gamma_5 = 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{8.22}$$

Now if $\mu \neq \nu$ we choose λ that differs from μ and ν and use $\gamma_\lambda\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu = (-1)^3\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu\gamma_\lambda$

$$\begin{aligned}
Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu &= Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu\gamma_\lambda^{-1}\gamma_\lambda \\
&= Tr\gamma_\lambda\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu\gamma_\lambda^{-1} \\
&= (-1)^3Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu\gamma_\lambda\gamma_\lambda^{-1} \\
&= -Tr\gamma_5\gamma_\mu\gamma_\nu = 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{8.23}$$

Thus the cross section is independent of the final spin and agrees with half the unpolarised Mott scattering cross section

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}(s_f) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{d\sigma_{Mott}}{d\Omega} \tag{8.24}$$

Thus at first order in perturbation theory Coulomb scattering of electrons does not lead to polarisation of the incoming beam.

8.3 Polarised Scattering

We assume that the spin of the incoming electron is parallel to its direction of motion, i.e. it has well defined helicity $\lambda_i = +1$

$$\begin{aligned}
s_{i\lambda_i} &= \lambda_i \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{E}{m_0} \frac{\mathbf{p}_i}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) \equiv \lambda_i s_i \\
s_{f\lambda_f} &= \lambda_i \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{E}{m_0} \frac{\mathbf{p}_f}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) \equiv \lambda_f s_f
\end{aligned} \tag{8.25}$$

Dropping terms we know to vanish from the previous example, the polarised scattering cross section becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}(s_i, s_f) &= \frac{4Z^4\alpha^2m_0^2}{|q|^4} Tr \left[\gamma_0 \frac{1 + \gamma_5 s_i^\sigma \gamma_\sigma (p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \gamma_0 \frac{1 + \gamma_5 s_f^\mu \gamma_\mu (p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right] \\
&= \frac{4Z^4\alpha^2m_0^2}{|q|^4} \frac{1}{4(2m_0)^2} \left(Tr[\gamma_0((p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0)\gamma_0((p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0)] \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \lambda_i \lambda_f Tr[\gamma_0 \gamma_5 s_i^\sigma \gamma_\sigma ((p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0) \gamma_0 \gamma_5 s_f^\delta \gamma_\delta ((p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0)] \right)
\end{aligned} \tag{8.26}$$

Here we define the degree of polarisation P of the scattered particles by as the difference between counting rates for the positive and negative helicities, normalised by the total counting rate:

$$P = \frac{d\sigma(\lambda_f = +1) - d\sigma(\lambda_f = -1)}{d\sigma(\lambda_f = +1) + d\sigma(\lambda_f = -1)} \tag{8.27}$$

If the initial state is fully polarised, e.g. $\lambda_i = +1$, the final degree of polarisation becomes, using ()

$$P = \frac{Tr[\gamma_0 \gamma_5 s_i^\sigma \gamma_\sigma ((p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0) \gamma_0 \gamma_5 s_f^\mu \gamma_\mu ((p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0)]}{Tr[\gamma_0((p_i)_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0) \gamma_0((p_f)_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0)]} \tag{8.28}$$

The evaluation of the trace in the denominator is done along the same lines as early calculations. Expand the numerator, using that the trace of an odd number of γ matrices vanishes,

$$\begin{aligned}
&Tr[\gamma_0 \gamma_5 s_i^\sigma \gamma_\sigma ((p_i)^\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0) \gamma_0 \gamma_5 s_f^\mu \gamma_\mu ((p_f)^\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0)] \\
&= s_i^\mu p_i^\delta s_f^\nu p_f^\nu Tr[\gamma_0 \gamma_\sigma \gamma_\mu \gamma_0 \gamma_\delta \gamma_\nu] + m_0^2 s_i^\sigma s_f^\delta Tr[\gamma_0 \gamma_\sigma \gamma_0 \gamma_\delta]
\end{aligned} \tag{8.29}$$

To evaluate the first trace we generalise the result of () to arbitrary even number of γ matrices. We know

$$Tr\gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} = 2\eta^{\mu_1\mu_2} Tr\gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - Tr\gamma^{\mu_2} \gamma^{\mu_1} \gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n}$$

Repeating this procedure we get

$$\begin{aligned}
Tr\gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} &= 2\eta^{\mu_1\mu_2} Tr\gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - \\
&\quad + 2\eta^{\mu_1\mu_n} Tr\gamma^{\mu_2} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} \\
&\quad - Tr\gamma^{\mu_2} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} \gamma^{\mu_1}
\end{aligned}$$

Using the cyclic property of traces we get

$$Tr\gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} = \eta^{\mu_1\mu_2} Tr\gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - \dots + \eta^{\mu_1\mu_n} Tr\gamma^{\mu_2} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} \quad (8.30)$$

To do the calculation we need the following scalar products:

It satisfies the orthogonality relations. Firstly

$$\begin{aligned} p_i \cdot s_i &= (E, \mathbf{p}_i) \cdot \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{E}{m_0} \frac{\mathbf{p}_i}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) \\ &= \frac{E}{m_0} (|\mathbf{p}| - \frac{\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{p}_i}{|\mathbf{p}|}) = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (8.31)$$

Similarly we have

$$p_f \cdot s_f = 0. \quad (8.32)$$

$$\begin{aligned} p_i \cdot s_f &= (E, \mathbf{p}_i) \cdot \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{E}{m_0} \frac{\mathbf{p}_f}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) \\ &= \frac{E}{m_0} (|\mathbf{p}| - \frac{\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{p}_f}{|\mathbf{p}|}) \\ &= \frac{E|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0} (1 - \cos \theta) \end{aligned} \quad (8.33)$$

$$p_f \cdot s_i = \frac{E|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0} (1 - \cos \theta) \quad (8.34)$$

Similarly we have

$$\begin{aligned} s_i \cdot s_f &= \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{E}{m_0} \frac{\mathbf{p}_i}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) \cdot \left(\frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{m_0}, \frac{E}{m_0} \frac{\mathbf{p}_f}{|\mathbf{p}|} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{m_0^2} (\mathbf{p}^2 - \frac{E^2}{\mathbf{p}^2} \mathbf{p}_i \cdot \mathbf{p}_f) \\ &= \frac{1}{m_0^2} (\mathbf{p}^2 - E^2 \cos \theta) \end{aligned} \quad (8.35)$$

$$p_i \cdot p_f = E^2 - \mathbf{p}^2 \cos \theta \quad (8.36)$$

We leave the details of the calculation to the reader. The result leads to

$$P = 1 - \frac{2 \sin \frac{\theta}{2}}{\left(\frac{E}{m_0}\right)^2 \cos \frac{\theta}{2} + \sin \frac{\theta}{2}} \quad (8.37)$$

In the nonrelativistic limit $E \rightarrow m_0$ this reduces to

$$P \simeq 1 - 2 \sin \frac{\theta}{2} = \cos \theta. \quad (8.38)$$

Chapter 9

Bremsstrahlung

When electrons scatter at protons or in the field of a nucleus, they can emit real photons.

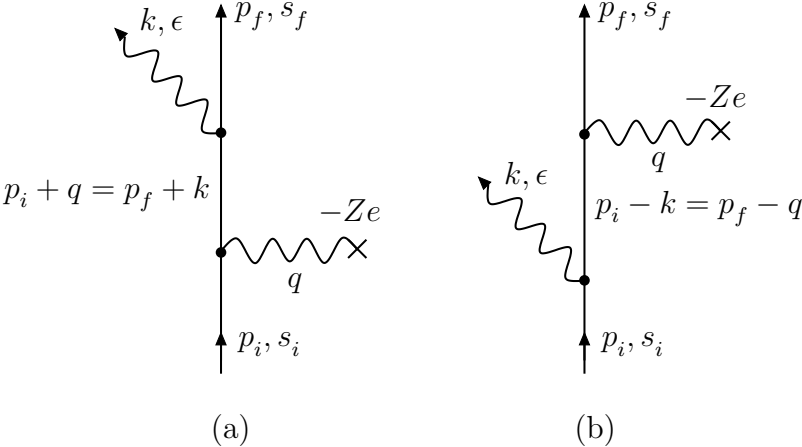


Figure 9.1: (a) . (b) .

Bremsstrahlung is a second order process

$$S_{fi}^{(2)} = -ie^2 \int d^4y d^4x \bar{\psi}_f(x) A_\mu(x) \gamma^\mu S_F(x-y) A_\nu(y) \gamma^\nu \psi_i(y) \tag{9.1}$$

the outgoing photon by

$$A_\mu(x, k) = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}} \epsilon_\mu(k, \lambda) (e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}) \tag{9.2}$$

the incoming electron

$$\psi_i(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_i V}} u(p_i, s_i) e^{-ip_i \cdot x} \quad (9.3)$$

the outgoing electron

$$\psi_f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_f V}} u(p_f, s_f) e^{ip_f \cdot x}. \quad (9.4)$$

and the Coulomb potetial is

$$A_0^{coul}(x) = -\frac{Ze}{|\mathbf{x}|} \quad (9.5)$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi} = e^2 \int d^4y d^4x \bar{\psi}_f(x) & \left[(-iA_\mu(x, k) \gamma^\mu) iS_F(x-y) (-i\gamma^0) A_0^{coul}(y) \right. \\ & \left. + (-i\gamma^0) A_0^{coul}(x) iS_F(x-y) (-iA_\mu(y, k) \gamma^\mu) \right] \psi_i(x) \end{aligned} \quad (9.6)$$

Again we transform to momentum space. The Fourier transformation of the Coulomb potential

$$-\frac{Ze}{|\mathbf{x}|} = -Ze4\pi \int \frac{d^3q}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{q}|^2} e^{-iq \cdot x} \quad (9.7)$$

Substituting all of the above into (9.6)

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi} = e^2 \int d^4y d^4x & \left(\sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_f V}} \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) e^{ip_f \cdot x} \right) \left[-i \left(\sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}} \epsilon_\mu(k, \lambda) (e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}) \right) \gamma^\mu \times \right. \\ & \times \left(\int \frac{d^4p}{(2\pi)^4} \frac{ie^{-ip \cdot (x-y)}}{p_\alpha \gamma^\alpha - m_0 + i\epsilon} \right) \times (-i\gamma^0) \left(-Ze4\pi \int \frac{d^3q}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{1}{|\mathbf{q}|^2} e^{-iq \cdot y} \right) \\ & \left. \times \left(\sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_i V}} u(p_i, s_i) e^{-ip_i \cdot y} \right) + exch. \right] \end{aligned} \quad (9.8)$$

rearranging

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi} &= -\frac{Ze^3 4\pi}{V^{3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \int d^4 y d^4 x \frac{d^3 q}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{d^4 p}{(2\pi)^4} \\
&\times \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) e^{ip_f \cdot x} \left[-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu (e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}) \frac{i e^{-ip \cdot (x-y)}}{p_\alpha \gamma^\alpha - m_0 + i\epsilon} (-i\gamma^0) \frac{e^{-iq \cdot y}}{|\mathbf{q}|^2} \right. \\
&\left. (-i\gamma^0) \frac{e^{-iq \cdot y}}{|\mathbf{q}|^2} \frac{i e^{-ip \cdot (x-y)}}{p_\alpha \gamma^\alpha - m_0 + i\epsilon} (-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu) (e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}) \right] u(p_i, s_i) e^{-ip_i \cdot y}
\end{aligned} \tag{9.9}$$

Performing the integrations

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int d^4 x (e^{ix \cdot (p_f - k - p)} + e^{ix \cdot (p_f + k - p)}) \int d^4 y e^{iy \cdot (-q + p - p_i)} \\
&= [(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f - k - p) + (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f + k - p)] (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(q + p - p_i) \\
&\int d^4 y (e^{iy \cdot (p - k - p_i)} + e^{iy \cdot (p + k - p_i)}) \int d^4 x e^{ix \cdot (p_f + q - p)} \\
&= [(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p - k - p_i) + (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p + k - p_i)] (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(-q + p - p_i)
\end{aligned}$$

The S -matrix becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi} &= -\frac{Ze^3 4\pi}{V^{3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \int d^4 y d^4 x \frac{d^3 q}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{d^4 p}{(2\pi)^4} \\
&\times \left\{ [(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f - k - p) + (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f + k - p)] (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(q + p - p_i) \right. \\
&\times \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) (-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu) \frac{i}{p_\alpha \gamma^\alpha - m_0 + i\epsilon} (-i\gamma^0) \frac{1}{|\mathbf{q}|^2} u(p_i, s_i) \\
&+ [(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p - k - p_i) + (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p + k - p_i)] (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(-q + p - p_i) \\
&\left. \times \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) (-i\gamma^0) \frac{1}{|\mathbf{q}|^2} \frac{i}{p_\alpha \gamma^\alpha - m_0 + i\epsilon} (-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu) u(p_i, s_i) \right\}
\end{aligned} \tag{9.10}$$

In the following we will need the formula

$$\int dx \delta(x - a) \delta(x - b) = \delta(a - b).$$

Consider the momentum integrals coming from the direct graph, we find

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int \frac{d^3q}{(2\pi)^3} \int \frac{d^4q}{(2\pi)^4} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f \pm k - p) (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p - q - p_i) f(p, |\mathbf{q}|) \\
&= \int \frac{d^3q}{(2\pi)^3} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f \pm k - q - p_i) f(p, |\mathbf{q}|) \\
&= 2\pi \delta(E_f - E_i \pm \omega) f(p, |\mathbf{q}|)
\end{aligned} \tag{9.11}$$

where $q = p_f \pm k - p_i$ and $p = p_f \pm k$. There is something similiary for the exchange graph.

Since we want to describe photon emmission the electron loses energy, $E_f < E_i$, which correspnds to $E_f = E_i - \omega$ - this is the arrangement measured experimentally. The S -matrix we require to describe emmission of a photon is then

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{f_i} &= -Ze^3 2\pi \delta(E_f + \omega - E_i) \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i V^2} \frac{4\pi}{|\mathbf{q}|^2}} \\
&\times \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \left[(-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu) \frac{i}{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu + k_\nu \gamma^\nu - m_0} (-i\gamma_0) \right. \\
&\quad \left. + (-i\gamma_0) \frac{i}{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu + k_\nu \gamma^\nu - m_0} (-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu) \right] u(p_i, s_i)
\end{aligned} \tag{9.12}$$

Using the relations $p_i^2 = p_f^2 = m_0^2$, $k^2 = 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{p_{f\mu} \gamma^\mu + k_\mu \gamma^\mu - m_0 + i\epsilon} &= \frac{p_{f\mu} \gamma^\mu + k_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{(p_f + k)^2 - m_0^2 + i\epsilon} \\
&= \frac{p_{f\mu} \gamma^\mu + k_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2p_f \cdot k + i\epsilon}.
\end{aligned} \tag{9.13}$$

9.1 Remarks on the Form of the S -Matrix element

• At the free vertex, where a free photon with polarisation vector ϵ_μ is emitted, a factor

i) $(-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu)$ occurs

ii) and the normalisation factor of the photon $\sqrt{4\pi/2\omega V}$ enters.

9.2 Bremsstrahlung Cross Section

We can simplify the notation by writing

$$S_{fi} = iZe^3 2\pi\delta(E_f + \omega - E_i) \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i V^2}} \frac{4\pi}{|\mathbf{q}|^2} \epsilon^\mu M_\mu(k), \quad (9.14)$$

where

$$M_\mu(k) = \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \left[\gamma_\mu \frac{p_{f\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + k_\alpha \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2p_f \cdot k + i\epsilon} \gamma_0 + \gamma_0 \frac{p_{i\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - k_\alpha \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{-2p_i \cdot k + i\epsilon} \gamma_\mu \right] u(p_i, s_i) \quad (9.15)$$

The bremsstrahlung cross section is given by

$$\begin{aligned} d\sigma &= \frac{1}{|\mathbf{v}_i| T} |S_{fi}|^2 \frac{V d^3 k}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{V d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3} \\ &= \frac{Z^2 e^6}{|\mathbf{v}_i|} \frac{4\pi}{2\omega} \frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i} \frac{(4\pi)^2}{|\mathbf{q}|^4} |\epsilon^\mu M_\mu(k)|^2 2\pi\delta(E_f + \omega - E_i) \frac{d^3 k}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3} \end{aligned} \quad (9.16)$$

9.3 Sum Over Polarizations of Photon

We know that gauge invariance implies the condition of conserved current

$$\frac{\partial J_\mu(x)}{\partial x_\mu} = 0, \quad (9.17)$$

where $J_\mu(x) = \bar{\psi}(x) \gamma_\mu \psi(x)$. In momentum space the conservation condition reads

$$k^\mu J_\mu(k) = 0 \quad (9.18)$$

Now the matrix element $M_\mu(k)$ given in (9.15) is a quantum mechanical transition current for Bremsstrahlung in lowest order perturbation theory and also satisfies

$$k^\mu M_\mu(k) = 0 \quad (9.19)$$

This condition is easily verified using $k_\mu \gamma^\mu p_\nu \gamma^\nu = -p_\mu \gamma^\mu k_\nu \gamma^\nu + 2p \cdot k$ and the dirac equation:

$$\bar{u}(p_f, s_f)(p_{f\mu} \gamma^\mu - m_0) = 0, \quad (p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu - m_0)u(p_i, s_i) = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} k^\mu M_\mu(k) &= \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \left[k_\mu \gamma^\mu \frac{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu + k_\nu \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2p_f \cdot k + i\epsilon} \gamma_0 + \gamma_0 \frac{p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu - k_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0}{-2p_i \cdot k + i\epsilon} k_\nu \gamma^\nu \right] u(p_i, s_i) \\ &= \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \left[\frac{-(p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu - m_0)k_\mu \gamma^\mu + 2p_f \cdot k + k^2}{2p_f \cdot k + i\epsilon} \gamma_0 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \gamma_0 \frac{-k_\nu \gamma^\nu (p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu - m_0) + 2p_i \cdot k - k^2}{-2p_i \cdot k + i\epsilon} \right] u(p_i, s_i) \\ &= \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \left[\frac{2p_f \cdot k}{2p_f \cdot k + i\epsilon} \gamma_0 + \gamma_0 \frac{2p_i \cdot k}{-2p_i \cdot k + i\epsilon} \right] u(p_i, s_i) \\ &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{9.20}$$

We now perform the summation over the photon polarisation vectors $\epsilon_\mu(\mathbf{k}, \lambda)$ with $\lambda = 1, 2$. The quantity of interest is

$$\overline{|\epsilon \cdot M_\mu(k)|^2} = \sum_{\lambda=1,2} |\epsilon_\mu(\mathbf{k}, \lambda) M^\mu(k)|^2 = \sum_{\lambda=1,2} \epsilon_\mu(\mathbf{k}, \lambda) \epsilon_\nu^*(\mathbf{k}, \lambda) M^\mu(k) M^{*\nu}(k) \tag{9.21}$$

We work in the radiation gauge and choose a particular coordinate which simplifies the calculation. Consider the coordinate system such that the momentum vector \mathbf{k} points in the z -direction

$$k^\mu = \omega(1, 0, 0, 1) \tag{9.22}$$

We choose the two transverse polarisation vectors

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon(\mathbf{k}, 1) &= (0, 1, 0, 0), \\ \epsilon(\mathbf{k}, 2) &= (0, 0, 1, 0). \end{aligned} \tag{9.23}$$

Now we use the condition of current conservation

$$k^\mu M_\mu = \omega(M^0 - M^3) = 0, \tag{9.24}$$

which implies $M^0 = M^3$. Therefore we can write

$$\overline{|\epsilon \cdot M|^2} = M^1 M^{*1} + M^2 M^{*2} + M^3 M^{*3} - M^0 M^{*0} = -M_\mu M^{*\mu} \quad (9.25)$$

Obviously this is Lorentz covariant. In general we have

$$\sum_{\lambda=1,2} \epsilon_\mu(\mathbf{k}, \lambda) \epsilon_\nu(\mathbf{k}, \lambda) = -\eta_{\mu\nu} + \text{gauge terms.} \quad (9.26)$$

The additional terms are proportional to k_μ or k_ν and thus do not contribute to any observable quantity since the sum is multiplied by conserved currents which satisfy $k \cdot J$.

9.4 The Infrared Catastrophe

A photon may be emitted which is too soft to be detected because of the energy resolution ΔE of the apparatus. Consequently, the experimental cross section is the sum of the cross section for bremsstrahlung of energy less than ΔE and second order (radiative corrected) elastic cross section, i.e.,

$$\left(\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega'} \right)_{Exp} = \left(\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega'} \right)_B + \left(\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega'} \right)_{El}. \quad (9.27)$$

Here $(d\sigma/\Omega')_B$ is the soft bremsstrahlung cross section integrated over the range of photon energy $0 \ll \omega \ll \Delta E$ and $(d\sigma/\Omega')_{El}$ is the cross section for radiative corrected elastic electron off the Coulomb potential.

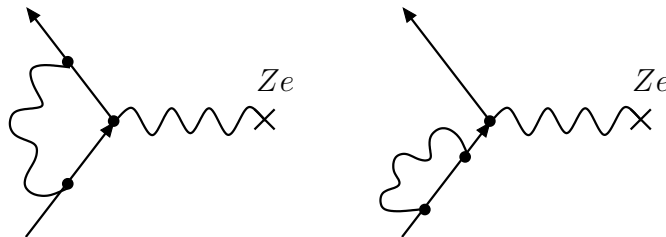


Figure 9.2: The two types of lowest order radiative corrections to elastic scattering of an electron of a Coulomb potential.

Chapter 10

Compton Scattering

We describe the incoming photon as a plane wave:

$$A_\mu(x, k) = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega V}} \epsilon_\mu(k, \lambda)(e^{-ik \cdot x} + e^{ik \cdot x}) \quad (10.1)$$

and the outgoing (scattered) photon by

$$A'_\mu(x', k') = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2\omega' V}} \epsilon_\mu(k, \lambda)(e^{-ik' \cdot x'} + e^{ik' \cdot x'}) \quad (10.2)$$

the incoming electron

$$\psi_i(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_i V}} u(p_i, s_i) e^{-ip_i \cdot x} \quad (10.3)$$

the outgoing electron

$$\psi_f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_f V}} u(p_f, s_f) e^{ip_f \cdot x}. \quad (10.4)$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi} = e^2 \int d^4x d^4y \bar{\psi}_f(x) & \left[(-iA_\mu(y, k')\gamma^\mu) iS_F(x-y)(-iA_\nu(y, k)\gamma^\nu) \right. \\ & \left. + (-iA_\mu(y, k)\gamma^\mu) iS_F(x-y)(-iA_\nu(y, k')\gamma^\nu) \right] \psi_i(y). \end{aligned} \quad (10.5)$$

From previous experience we know to write this in momentum space to be

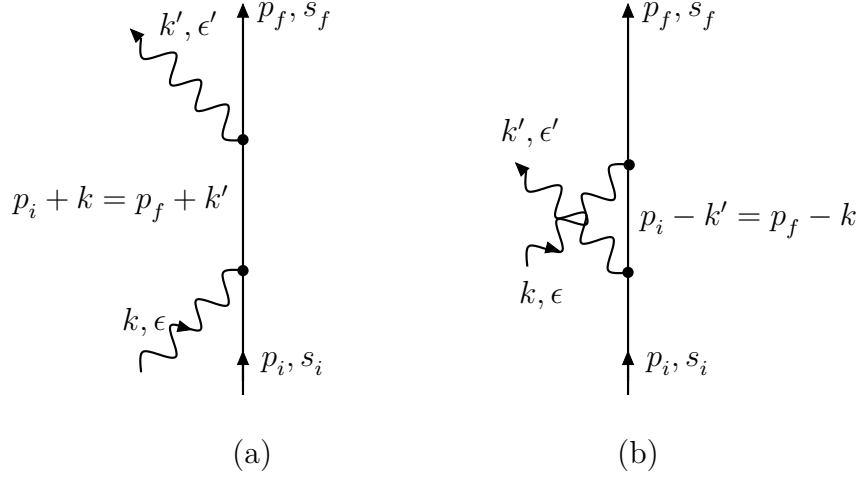


Figure 10.1: The direct and exchange diagrams describing Compton scattering.

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi} &= \frac{e^2}{V^2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_i E_f}} \sqrt{\frac{(4\pi)^2}{2\omega 2\omega'}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f + k' - p_i - k) \\
&\times \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \left[(-i\epsilon'_\mu \gamma^\mu) \frac{i}{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu + k'_\nu \gamma^\nu - m_0} (-i\epsilon_\sigma \gamma^\sigma) \right. \\
&\quad \left. + (-i\epsilon_\mu \gamma^\mu) \frac{i}{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu - k'_\nu \gamma^\nu - m_0} (-i\epsilon'_\sigma \gamma^\sigma) \right] u(p_i, s_i) \quad (10.6)
\end{aligned}$$

In going from (10.5) to (10.6) we integrated over plane waves which gave delta functions which impose energy-momentum conservation at the vertices. It results in four different processes, two of which are not allowed kinematically: the emission or absorption of two photons by a free electron. A third process is not compatible with the kinematic conditions fixed by the experiment. The process describing Compton scattering corresponds to the followings constraints on four momentum:

$$+k + p_i = +k' + p_f \quad (10.7)$$

The situation is similarly to what we encountered in Bremsstrahlung in that not every term is physically relevant for the process considered. The term in the Compton scattering amplitude stems from the part $\exp(-ik \cdot x)$ of the photon field in (10.1) describing the absorption of a photon with four-momentum k^μ by the electron and from the part $\exp(-ik' \cdot x')$ of the photon field in (10.2) describing a photon emitted by the electron with four-momentum k'^μ .

10.1 Compton Scattering Cross Section

We split the S -matrix into two parts:

$$S_{fi} = -i \frac{e^2}{V^2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_i E_f}} \sqrt{\frac{(4\pi)^2}{2\omega 2\omega'}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_f + k' - p_i - k) \epsilon^\mu(\mathbf{k}', \lambda') \epsilon^\nu(\mathbf{k}, \lambda) M_{\mu\nu} \quad (10.8)$$

Here $M_{\mu\nu}$ is the Compton tensor

$$M_{\mu\nu} = \bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \left[\gamma_\mu \frac{p_{i\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + k_\alpha \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{2p_i \cdot k + i\epsilon} \gamma_\nu + \gamma_\nu \frac{p_{i\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - k'_\alpha \gamma^\alpha + m_0}{-2p_i \cdot k' + i\epsilon} \gamma_\mu \right] u(p_i, s_i) \quad (10.9)$$

we have

$$k'^\mu M_{\mu\nu} = k^\nu M_{\mu\nu} = 0. \quad (10.10)$$

The proof is analogous to the bremsstrahlung case.

The cross section starts as

$$d\sigma = \int \frac{|S_{fi}|^2}{T |\mathbf{v}_{rel}|/V} \frac{V d^3 p_f}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{V d^3 k'}{(2\pi)^3} \quad (10.11)$$

with

$$\frac{|S_{fi}|^2}{T} = \frac{|S_{fi}|^2}{VT/V}$$

being the transition rate per unit volume and normalised to one electron per volume. $|\mathbf{v}_{rel}|/V$ is the incoming photon flux.

$$d\sigma = \frac{e^4 m_0^2}{V^4 E_i E_f} \quad (10.12)$$

We calculate the cross section in the laboratory frame.

$$p_i = (m_0, 0)$$

Also

$$|\mathbf{v}_{rel}| = |\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{v}_e| = |\mathbf{c}| = c$$

We use the covariant expression for the density of final states:

$$\frac{d^3p}{2E} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d^4p \delta(p^2 - m_0^2) \Theta(p_0) \quad (10.13)$$

Averaging over initial and final electron spins and polarisations

$$\frac{1}{4} \sum_{pol} \sum_{spin} |\epsilon^\mu(\mathbf{k}', \lambda') \epsilon^\nu(\mathbf{k}, \lambda) M_{\mu\nu}|^2 = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{spin} M^{\mu\nu} M_{\mu\nu}^* \quad (10.14)$$

(on account of (10.10) and (9.26)).

the unpolarised differential cross section for Compton scattering is then

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = \frac{\alpha^2}{2m} \left(\frac{\omega'}{\omega} \right)^2 \left\{ \frac{\omega}{\omega'} + \frac{\omega'}{\omega} - \sin^2 \theta \right\}. \quad (10.15)$$

10.2 Annihilation of Particle and Antiparticle

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi} = & e^2 \int d^4x d^4y \bar{\psi}_+(x) \left[(-iA_\mu(y, k') \gamma^\mu) iS_F(x-y) (-iA_\nu(y, k) \gamma^\nu) \right. \\ & \left. + (-iA_\mu(y, k) \gamma^\mu) iS_F(x-y) (-iA_\nu(y, k') \gamma^\nu) \right] \psi_-(y). \end{aligned} \quad (10.16)$$

To fit the experimental situation both photon outgoing plane waves should be used. We are lead to the following expression in momentum space:

$$\begin{aligned} S_{fi} = & \frac{e^2}{V^2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_+ E_-}} \sqrt{\frac{(4\pi)^2}{\omega_1 \omega_2}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(k_1 + k_2 - p_+ - p_-) \\ & \times \bar{v}(p_+, s_+) \left[(-i\epsilon_{2\mu} \gamma^\mu) \frac{i}{p_{-\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - k_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - m_0} (-i\epsilon_{1\nu} \gamma^\nu) \right. \\ & \left. + (-i\epsilon_{1\mu} \gamma^\mu) \frac{i}{p_{-\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - k_{2\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - m_0} (-i\epsilon_{2\nu} \gamma^\nu) \right] u(p_-, s_-) \end{aligned} \quad (10.17)$$

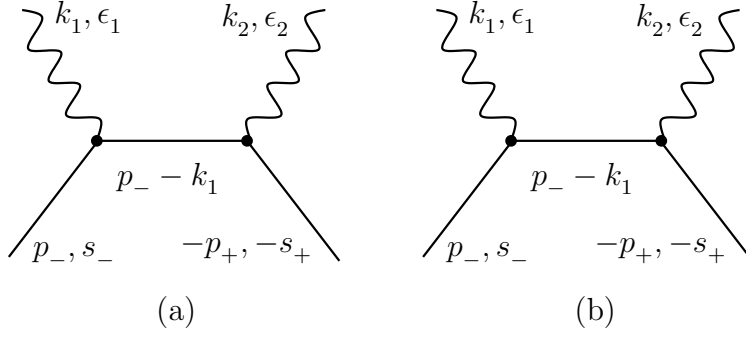


Figure 10.2: Direct and exchange graph of pair annihilation into two photons.

10.3 Second Order Electron-Proton Scattering

Before we state Feynman's rules for QED we wish to examine how to formulate the amplitude for a second order scattering problem, namely the second order S -matrix for electron-proton scattering.

The amplitude for second order electron proton scattering

$$S_{fi}^{(2)} = -ie^2 \int d^4x d^4y \bar{\psi}_f(x) A_\mu \gamma^\mu S_F(x-y) A_\nu \gamma^\nu \psi_i(y) \quad (10.18)$$

The second order electron current is given by

$$J_{\mu\nu}^{(2)}(x, y) = ie^2 \bar{\psi}_f(x) \gamma_\mu S_F(x-y) \gamma_\nu \psi_i(y) \quad (10.19)$$

We generalise the relation

$$A^\mu(x) = \int d^4y D_F(x-y) J^\mu(y).$$

by conjecturing

$$A_\mu(x) A_\nu(y) = \int d^4X d^4Y D_F(x-X) D_F(y-Y) J_{\mu\nu}^{p(2)}(X, Y). \quad (10.20)$$

By symmetry the proton current $J_{\mu\nu}^{p(2)}(X, Y)$ should be

$$J_{\mu\nu}^{p(2)}(X, Y) = ie^2 \bar{\psi}_f^p(X) \gamma_\mu S_F(X-Y) \gamma_\nu \psi_i^p(Y) \quad (10.21)$$

Substituting () and (10.20) into

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi}^{(2)}(dir.) &= e^2 e_p^2 \int d^4x d^4y d^4X d^4Y \\
&\times [\bar{\psi}_f(x) \gamma^\mu S_F(x-y) \gamma^\nu \psi_i(y)] \\
&\times D_F(x-X) D_F(y-Y) \\
&\times [\bar{\psi}_f^p(X) \gamma_\mu S_F(X-Y) \gamma_\nu \psi_i^p(Y)]
\end{aligned} \tag{10.22}$$

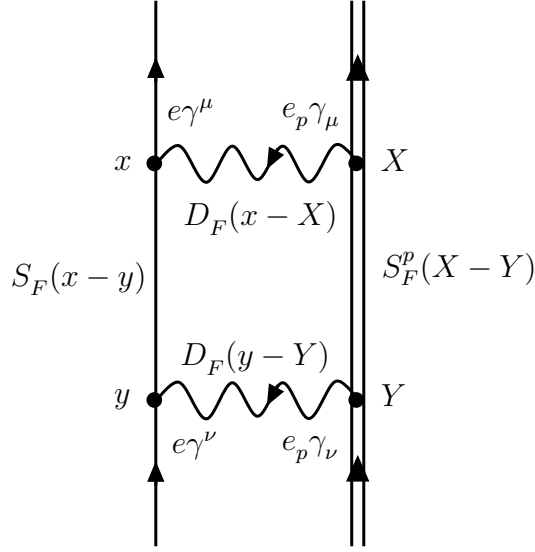


Figure 10.3:

Since the two photons emitted by the proton current are indistinguishable the electron at x does not know whether the photon absorbed there has been emitted at X or Y . According to quantum mechanics we must coherently add the contribution coming from the corresponding exchange graph in (10.3).

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi}^{(2)}(exch.) &= e^2 e_p^2 \int d^4x d^4y d^4X d^4Y \\
&\times [\bar{\psi}_f(x) \gamma^\mu S_F(x-y) \gamma^\nu \psi_i(y)] \\
&\times D_F(x-Y) D_F(y-X) \\
&\times [\bar{\psi}_f^p(X) \gamma_\nu S_F(X-Y) \gamma_\mu \psi_i^p(Y)]
\end{aligned} \tag{10.23}$$

Notice how the indices μ and ν in the ‘proton current’ term have been exchanged with respect to the direct term.

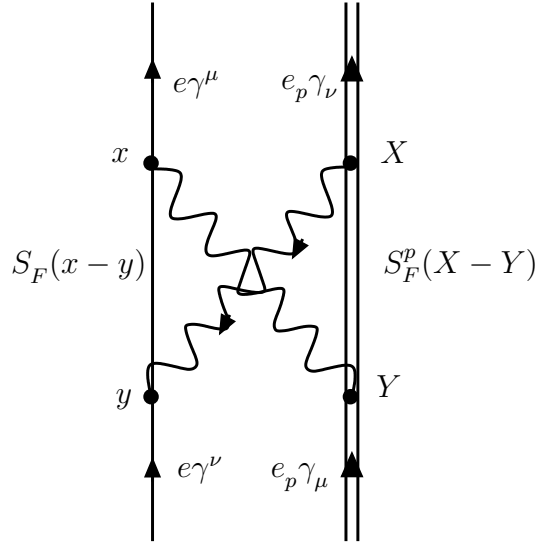


Figure 10.4:

10.4 Feynman Diagram in Momentum Space

As always, the external particles (incoming and outgoing electron and proton) are described by plane waves. The direct term becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_{fi}^{(2)}(dir.) &= \frac{(4\pi)^2 e^4}{V^2} \int d^4x d^4y d^4X d^4Y \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \sqrt{\frac{M_0^2}{E_f^p E_i^p}} \\
 &\int \frac{d^4q_1}{(2\pi)^4} \frac{d^4q_2}{(2\pi)^4} \frac{d^4p}{(2\pi)^4} \frac{d^4P}{(2\pi)^4}
 \end{aligned} \tag{10.24}$$

It is easy to perform the integration over spacetime coordinates. It results in the product δ^4 -functions:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(2\pi)^4 \delta^4(q_1 + p - p_f) (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(q_2 - p + p_i) \\
 &\times (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(-q_2 - P + P_i) (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(-q_1 + P - P_f).
 \end{aligned} \tag{10.25}$$

Each δ^4 -function expresses the energy-momentum conservation at one of the four vertices. Now we can integrate over

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi}^{(2)}(dir.) &= \frac{(4\pi)^2 e^4}{V^2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \sqrt{\frac{M_0^2}{E_f^p E_i^p}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f + p_f - P_i - p_i) \\
&\times \int \frac{d^4 q_1}{(2\pi)^4} \frac{1}{q_1^2 + i\epsilon} \frac{1}{(q - q_1)^2 + i\epsilon} \\
&\times \left[\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\mu \frac{1}{p_{f\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - q_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - m_0 + i\epsilon} \gamma^\nu u(p_i, s_i) \right] \\
&\times \left[\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma_\mu \frac{1}{P_{f\alpha} \gamma^\alpha + q_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - M_0 + i\epsilon} \gamma_\nu u(P_i, S_i) \right] \quad (10.26)
\end{aligned}$$

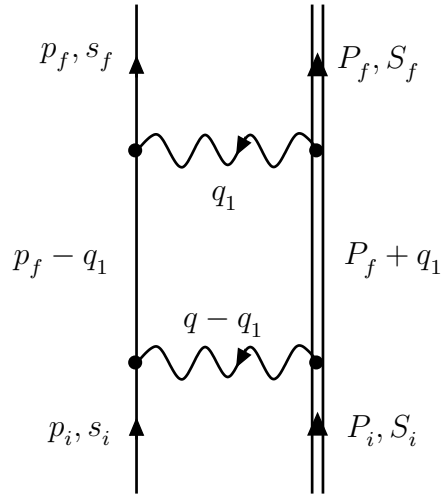


Figure 10.5:

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{fi}^{(2)}(exch.) &= \frac{(4\pi)^2 e^4}{V^2} \sqrt{\frac{m_0^2}{E_f E_i}} \sqrt{\frac{M_0^2}{E_f^p E_i^p}} (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(P_f + p_f - P_i - p_i) \\
&\times \int \frac{d^4 q_1}{(2\pi)^4} \frac{1}{q_1^2 + i\epsilon} \frac{1}{(q - q_1)^2 + i\epsilon} \\
&\times \left[\bar{u}(p_f, s_f) \gamma^\mu \frac{1}{p_{f\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - q_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - m_0 + i\epsilon} \gamma^\nu u(p_i, s_i) \right] \\
&\times \left[\bar{u}(P_f, S_f) \gamma_\nu \frac{1}{P_{f\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - q_{1\alpha} \gamma^\alpha - M_0 + i\epsilon} \gamma_\mu u(P_i, S_i) \right] \quad (10.27)
\end{aligned}$$

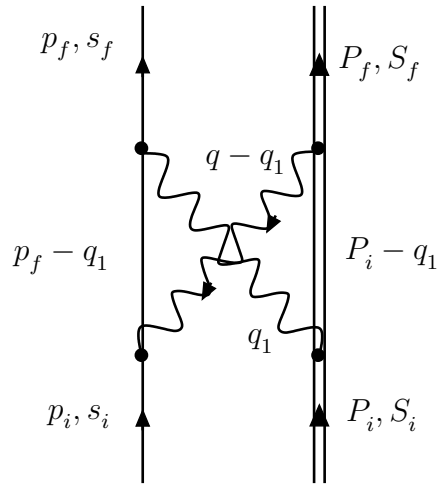


Figure 10.6:

10.5 Remarks on form of scattering Matrix

- each vertex contributes a factor of the form $-ie\gamma_\mu \dots$
- each external particle yields a factor $\sqrt{m_0/E}$.

Chapter 11

Feynmann Rules of QED

There origins should be clear to the reader.

11.1 Scattering Amplitudes

We consider a scattering process in which two particles, they may be electrons, positrons or photons, with four-momenta

$$p_i = (E_i, \mathbf{p}_i), \quad i = 1, 2,$$

collide and produce N final particles with momenta

$$p_f = (E_f, \mathbf{p}_f), \quad f = 1, \dots, N.$$

Individual energy-momentum conservation at each vertex leads to conservation of total energy-momentum, represented by the delta function

$$\delta^4 \left(p_1 + p_2 - \sum_{i=1}^n p'_i \right).$$

The scattering matrix element S_{fi} is given by

$$S_{fi} = i(2\pi)^4 \delta^4 \left(p_1 + p_2 - \sum_{i=1}^n p'_i \right) M_{fi} \prod_{i=1}^2 \sqrt{\frac{N_i}{2E_i V}} \prod_{i=1}^n \sqrt{\frac{N'_i}{2E'_i V}} \quad (11.1)$$

The normalisation factors N_i :

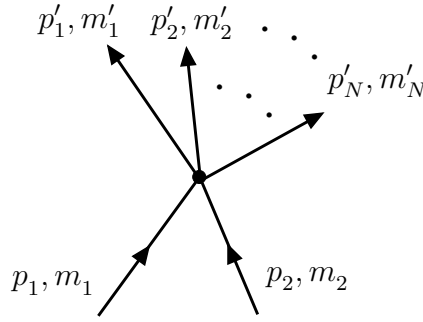


Figure 11.1: We are considering reactions in which there are two particles in the initial state and n particles in the final state.

$$N_i = \begin{cases} 4\pi & \text{photons} \\ 2m_0 & \text{spin} - \frac{1}{2} \text{particles} \end{cases} \quad (11.2)$$

After drawing any Feynman diagram in momentum space we see clearly how to translate the various lines in the graph directly into mathematical expressions.

The Feynman rules concern the calculation of the reduced scattering matrix element M_{fi} . A Feynman graph describing a scattering process consists of three parts:

- (1) the external lines representing the wave functions of incoming and outgoing particles,
- (2) the internal lines described by propagators, and
- (3) the vertices representing the interactions between the particles.

With each external line one associates the following factors:

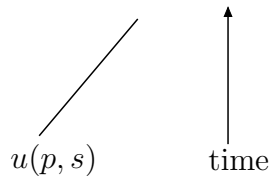


Figure 11.2: An electron entering an interaction.

electron:

$$iS_F = \frac{i(p_\mu \gamma^\mu + m_0)}{p^2 - m_0^2 + i\epsilon} \quad (11.3)$$

photon:

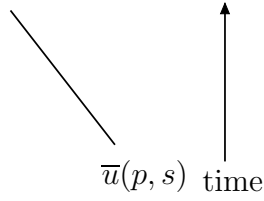


Figure 11.3: An electron leaving an interaction.

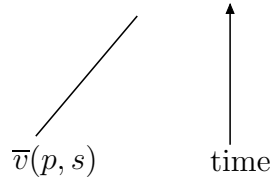


Figure 11.4: .

$$D_F^{\mu\nu}(k) = \frac{-i4\pi \eta^{\mu\nu}}{k^2 + i\epsilon} \quad (11.4)$$

Each vertex is associated with a factor

$$-ie\gamma_\mu. \quad (11.5)$$

- a) a factor of -1 for each incoming positron (outgoing electron with negative energy)
- b) a factor of -1 in the case that two graphs which differ only by the exchange of two fermion lines.
- c) a factor of -1 for each closed fermion loop.

For each internal loop, integrate over

$$\int \frac{d^4q}{(2\pi)^4}$$

11.2 Differential Cross Section

To obtain the transition rate to a group of final states with momenta in the intervals $f = 1, \dots, N$, we multiply by the number of these states which is

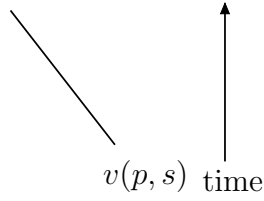


Figure 11.5: .

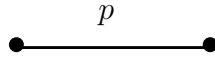


Figure 11.6: Electron propagator.

$$\prod_f \frac{V d^3 \mathbf{p}'_f}{(2\pi)^3} \quad (11.6)$$

$$d\sigma = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{(p_1 \cdot p_2)^2 - m_1^2 m_2^2}} N_1 N_2 (2\pi)^4 \delta^4(p_1 + p_2 - \sum_{i=1}^N p'_i) S |M_{fi}|^2 \prod_f \frac{d^3 \mathbf{p}'_f}{2E'_f (2\pi)^3} \quad (11.7)$$

The degeneracy factor S exists when the final state contains identical particles. Its taken into account by

$$S = \prod_k \frac{1}{g_k!}, \quad (11.8)$$

where g_k particles of the kind k in the final state.

11.2.1 External static electromagnetic fields

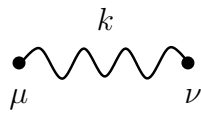


Figure 11.7: Photon propagator.

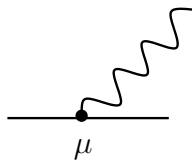


Figure 11.8: Vertex

Chapter 12

Renormalisation

12.1 Divergent Feynmann Diagrams

12.2 Dimensional Regularisation

We introduce the Γ -function:

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-u} u^{z-1} du \quad (12.1)$$

Integrating by parts

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma(z) &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-u} u^{z-1} du \\ &= [-e^{-u} u^{z-1}]_0^{\infty} + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-u} (z-1) u^{z-2} du \\ &= (z-1) \Gamma(z-1). \end{aligned} \quad (12.2)$$

If z is equal to an integer n then,

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma(n) &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-u} u^{n-1} du \\ &= (n-1)(n-2) \dots 1 \int_0^{\infty} e^{-u} du \\ &= (n-1)! \end{aligned} \quad (12.3)$$

So the Γ -function is also the factorial function. The following formula can be

12.2.1 Feynmann Parameterisation

$$\frac{1}{a^m b^n} = \frac{\Gamma(m+n)}{\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n)} \int_0^1 du \frac{u^{m-1}(1-u)^{n-1}}{[au + b(1-u)]^{m+n}} \quad (12.4)$$

Derivation.

$$\frac{1}{ab} = \frac{1}{b-a} \left(\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{b} \right) = \frac{1}{b-a} \int_a^b \frac{dt}{t^2} \quad (12.5)$$

Defining $x = b + (a-b)z$,

$$\frac{1}{ab} = \int_0^1 \frac{du}{[b + (a-b)u]^2} = \int_0^1 \frac{du}{[au + b(1-u)]^2} \quad (12.6)$$

This can be rewritten as

$$\frac{1}{ab} = \int_0^1 du_1 du_2 \delta(u_1 + u_2 - 1) \frac{1}{[a_1 u_1 + a_2 u_2]^2} \quad (12.7)$$

Differentiation with respect to b gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{ab^n} &= \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} \frac{d^{n-1}}{db^{n-1}} \frac{1}{ab} \\ &= \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} \frac{d^{n-1}}{db^{n-1}} \int_0^1 \frac{du}{[au + b(1-u)]^2} \\ &= n \int_0^1 \frac{du(1-u)^{n-1}}{[au + b(1-u)]^{n+1}} \end{aligned} \quad (12.8)$$

Differentiation the previous result with respect to a gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{a^m b^n} &= \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{(m-1)!} \frac{d^{m-1}}{da^{m-1}} \frac{1}{ab^n} \\ &= n \frac{(-1)^{m-1}}{(m-1)!} \frac{d^{m-1}}{da^{m-1}} \int_0^1 \frac{du}{[au + b(1-u)]^{n+1}} \\ &= \frac{n \times (n+1) \cdots (n+m-1)}{(m-1)!} \int_0^1 \frac{du u^{m-1} (1-u)^{n-1}}{[au + b(1-u)]^{m+n}} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(m+n)}{\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n)} \int_0^1 \frac{du u^{m-1} (1-u)^{n-1}}{[au + b(1-u)]^{m+n}} \end{aligned} \quad (12.9)$$

Equation (12.7) generalises to

$$\frac{1}{a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n} = \Gamma(n) \int_0^1 du_1 \cdots \int_0^1 du_n \frac{\delta(u_1 + \cdots + u_n - 1)}{[u_1 a_1 + u_2 a_2 + \cdots + u_n a_n]^n} \quad (12.10)$$

We can prove this by induction,

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{a_1 \cdots a_{m+1}} = \frac{1}{a_{m+1}} \frac{1}{a_1 \cdots a_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{a_{m+1}} \Gamma(m) \int_0^1 du_1 \cdots \int_0^1 du_m \frac{\delta(u_1 + \cdots + u_m - 1)}{[u_1 a_1 + u_2 a_2 + \cdots + u_m a_m]^m} \\ &= \Gamma(m) \int_0^1 du_1 \cdots \int_0^1 du_m \delta\left(\sum_{i=1}^m u_i - 1\right) \frac{1}{a_{m+1}} \frac{1}{[\sum_{i=1}^m u_i a_i]^m} \\ &= \Gamma(m) \int_0^1 du_1 \cdots \int_0^1 du_m \delta\left(\sum_{i=1}^m u_i - 1\right) \int_0^1 \frac{dw_{m+1} (1 - w_{m+1})^{m-1}}{[a_{m+1} w_{m+1} + (\sum_{i=1}^m u_i a_i)(1 - w_{m+1})]^{m+1}} \end{aligned} \quad (12.11)$$

where we have used (12.8). Now making the substitution

$$w_i := (1 - w_{m+1})u_i, \quad dw_i = (1 - w_{m+1})du_i$$

and noting the property that $\delta(f(x)/a) = a\delta(f(x))$ then

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{a_1 \cdots a_{m+1}} \\ &= \Gamma(m+1) \int_0^1 dw_{m+1} \int_0^1 du_1 \cdots \int_0^1 du_m \delta\left(\sum_{i=1}^m u_i - 1\right) \\ & \quad \frac{(1 - w_{m+1})^{m-1}}{[a_{m+1} w_{m+1} + (\sum_{i=1}^m u_i a_i)(1 - w_{m+1})]^{m+1}} \\ &= \Gamma(m+1) \int_0^1 dw_{m+1} \int_0^{1-w_{m+1}} dw_1 \cdots \int_0^{1-w_{m+1}} dw_m \delta\left(\sum_{i=1}^m \frac{w_i}{1 - w_{m+1}} - 1\right) \frac{1}{(1 - w_{m+1})^m} \\ & \quad \frac{(1 - w_{m+1})^{m-1}}{[w_1 a_1 + \cdots + w_m a_m + w_{m+1} a_{m+1}]^{m+1}} \\ &= \Gamma(m+1) \int_0^1 dw_{m+1} \int_0^{1-w_{m+1}} dw_1 \cdots \int_0^{1-w_{m+1}} dw_m \frac{\delta(\sum_{i=1}^{m+1} w_i - 1)}{[w_1 a_1 + \cdots + w_{m+1} a_{m+1}]^{m+1}} \end{aligned} \quad (12.12)$$

Now because of the delta function the expression vanishes unless we have:

$$1 - w_{m+1} = \sum_{i=1}^m w_i$$

implying that the delta function vanishes for

$$w_i > 1 - w_{m+1} \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots, m.$$

As such we are able to extend the upper limit of integration in (12.12) from $1 - w_{m+1}$ to 1, so that

$$\frac{1}{a_1 \dots a_{m+1}} = \Gamma(m+1) \int_0^1 dw_1 \dots dw_{m+1} \frac{\delta(\sum_{i=1}^{m+1} w_i - 1)}{[w_1 a_1 + \dots + w_{m+1} a_{m+1}]^{m+1}} \quad (12.13)$$

By repeated differentiation of (12.10), we obtain the more general result

$$\frac{1}{a_1^{m_1} a_2^{m_2} \dots a_n^{m_n}} = \frac{\Gamma(m_1 + \dots + m_n)}{\Gamma(m_1) \dots \Gamma(m_n)} \int_0^1 du_1 \dots \int_0^1 du_n \delta\left(\sum_{i=1}^n u_i - 1\right) \frac{u_1^{m_1-1} \dots u_n^{m_n-1}}{[\sum_{i=1}^n u_i a_i]^{\sum m_i}} \quad (12.14)$$

This formula is true even when the m_i 's are not integers.

Alternative formula

We can generalise the original form

$$\frac{1}{a_1 a_2} = \int_0^1 \frac{du_1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1]^2} \quad (12.15)$$

generalises to three factors,

$$\frac{1}{a_1 a_2 a_3} = 2 \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1 + (a_3 - a_2)u_2]^3}. \quad (12.16)$$

We prove this by integrating with respect to z_2 ,

$$\begin{aligned}
& 2 \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1 + (a_3 - a_2)u_2]^3} \\
= & 2 \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \frac{1}{(a_3 - a_2)^3 \left[\frac{a_1}{a_3 - a_2} + \frac{(a_2 - a_1)}{a_3 - a_2} u_1 + u_2 \right]^3} \\
= & 2 \int_0^1 du_1 \frac{1}{(a_3 - a_2)^3} \left[-\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\left[\frac{a_1}{a_3 - a_2} + \frac{(a_2 - a_1)}{a_3 - a_2} u_1 + u_2 \right]^2} \right]_0^{u_1} \\
= & \frac{1}{a_3 - a_2} \int_0^1 du_1 \left(\frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1]^2} - \frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1 + (a_3 - a_2)u_1]^2} \right) \\
= & \frac{1}{a_3 - a_2} \left(\frac{1}{a_1 a_2} - \frac{1}{a_1 a_3} \right) \\
= & \frac{1}{a_1 a_2 a_3} \tag{12.17}
\end{aligned}$$

where we used (12.15). This generalises to an arbitrary number of factors

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{a_1 a_2 \dots a_n} &= \Gamma(n) \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \dots \int_0^{u_{n-2}} du_{n-1} \\
&\quad \times \frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1 + \dots + (a_n - a_{n-1})u_{n-1}]^n} \tag{12.18}
\end{aligned}$$

We prove this by induction. First we integrate with respect to u_{n-1}

$$\begin{aligned}
& \Gamma(m+1) \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \cdots \int_0^{u_{m-1}} du_m \frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1 + \cdots + (a_{m+1} - a_m)u_m]^{m+1}} \\
&= \frac{\Gamma(m+1)}{(a_{m+1} - a_m)^{m+1}} \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \cdots \int_0^{u_{m-1}} du_m \frac{1}{\left[\frac{a_1}{a_{m+1} - a_m} + \frac{(a_2 - a_1)}{a_{m+1} - a_m}u_1 + \cdots + u_m\right]^{m+1}} \\
&= \frac{\Gamma(m+1)}{(a_{m+1} - a_m)^{m+1}} \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \cdots \int_0^{u_{m-2}} du_{m-1} \\
&\quad \times \left[-\frac{1}{m} \frac{1}{\left[\frac{a_1}{a_{m+1} - a_m} + \frac{(a_2 - a_1)}{a_{m+1} - a_m}u_1 + \cdots + \frac{a_m - a_{m-1}}{a_{m+1} - a_m}u_{m-1} + u_m\right]^m} \right]_0^{u_{m-1}} \\
&= \frac{\Gamma(m+1)}{m(a_{m+1} - a_m)} \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \cdots \int_0^{u_{m-2}} du_{m-1} \\
&\quad \times \left(\frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1 + \cdots + (a_m - a_{m-1})u_{m-1}]^m} \right. \\
&\quad \quad \left. - \frac{1}{[a_1 + (a_2 - a_1)u_1 + \cdots + (a_{m+1} - a_{m-1})u_{m-1}]^m} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{a_{m+1} - a_m} \left(\frac{1}{a_1 \cdots a_{m-1} a_m} - \frac{1}{a_1 \cdots a_{m-1} a_{m+1}} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{a_1 a_2 \cdots a_{m+1}} \tag{12.19}
\end{aligned}$$

where we have used (12.18) with $n = m$.

By repeated differentiation of (12.10), we obtain the more general result

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{a_1^{m_1} a_2^{m_2} \cdots a_n^{m_n}} &= \frac{\Gamma(m_1 + \cdots + m_n)}{\Gamma(m_1) \cdots \Gamma(m_n)} \int_0^1 du_1 \int_0^{u_1} du_2 \cdots \int_0^{u_{n-2}} du_{n-1} \\
&\quad \times \frac{(1 - u_1)^{m_1 - 1} \cdots (u_{n-2} - u_{n-1})^{m_{n-2} - 1} u_{n-1}^{m_{n-1} - 1}}{[a_1(1 - u_1) + \cdots + a_{n-1}(u_{n-2} - u_{n-1}) + a_n u_{n-1}]^{\sum_i m_i}} \tag{12.20}
\end{aligned}$$

12.2.2 The d -Dimensional Integral

polar coordinates in two dimensions

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 &= r \cos \theta_1 \\x_2 &= r \sin \theta_1\end{aligned}\tag{12.21}$$

In three dimensions, we use the transformation to spherical coordinates

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 &= r \cos \theta_1 \\x_2 &= r \sin \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \\x_3 &= r \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2\end{aligned}\tag{12.22}$$

The d -dimensional transformation is

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 &= r \cos \theta_1 \\x_2 &= r \sin \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \\x_3 &= r \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 \\&\vdots \\x_{d-2} &= r \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 \dots \sin \theta_{d-2} \cos \theta_{d-1} \\x_{d-1} &= r \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 \dots \sin \theta_{d-2} \sin \theta_{d-1}\end{aligned}\tag{12.23}$$

We calculate the Jacobian row by row

$$\begin{aligned}
J &= \left(\frac{\partial(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_d)}{\partial(r, \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_{d-1})} \right) \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_1 & -r \sin \theta_1 & 0 & \dots \\ \sin \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 & r \cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 & -r \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 & \dots \\ \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & r \cos \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & r \sin \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 \dots & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \\
&= r^{d-1} \cos \theta_1 \times \cos \theta_1 \det \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_2 & -\sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 & \dots \\ \sin \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & \sin \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \\
&+ r^{d-1} \sin \theta_1 \times \sin \theta_1 \det \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_2 & -\sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 & \dots \\ \sin \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & \sin \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \\
&= r^{d-1} [\cos^2 \theta_1 (\sin \theta_1)^{d-2} + \sin^2 \theta_1 (\sin \theta_1)^{d-2}] \\
&\det \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_2 & -\sin \theta_2 & \dots \\ \sin \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & \cos \theta_2 \cos \theta_3 & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \\
&= (\sin \theta_1)^{d-2} (\sin \theta_2)^{d-3} \dots (\sin \theta_{d-3})^2 \\
&\det \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_{d-2} & -\sin \theta_{d-2} & 0 \\ \sin \theta_{d-2} \cos \theta_{d-1} & \cos \theta_{d-2} \cos \theta_{d-1} & -\sin \theta_{d-2} \sin \theta_{d-1} \\ \sin \theta_{d-2} \sin \theta_{d-1} & \cos \theta_{d-2} \sin \theta_{d-1} & \sin \theta_{d-2} \cos \theta_{d-1} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= (\sin \theta_1)^{d-2} (\sin \theta_2)^{d-3} \dots (\sin \theta_{d-3})^2 \det \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_{d-1} & -\sin \theta_{d-1} \\ \sin \theta_{d-1} & \cos \theta_{d-1} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= r^{d-1} (\sin \theta_1)^{d-2} (\sin \theta_2)^{d-3} \dots (\sin \theta_{d-2}) \tag{12.24}
\end{aligned}$$

The Gaussian integral is then

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-\vec{x}^2} d^d x = \int_0^\infty x^{d-1} e^{-x^2} dx \int_0^\pi (\sin \theta_1)^{d-1} d\theta_1 \dots \int_0^\pi \sin \theta_{d-2} d\theta_{d-2} \int_0^\pi d\theta_{d-1}. \tag{12.25}$$

To evaluate the integrals we employ integration by parts,

$$\begin{aligned}
I_n &= \int_0^\pi (\sin \theta)^{n-1} d\theta \\
&= [\sin \theta)^{n-1} (-\cos \theta)]_0^\pi - (n-1) \int_0^\pi (\sin \theta)^{n-2} \cos \theta (-\cos \theta) d\theta \\
&= (n-1) \int_0^\pi (\sin \theta)^{n-2} (1 - \sin^2 \theta) d\theta \\
&= (n-1) \int_0^\pi [(\sin \theta)^{n-2} - (\sin \theta)^n] d\theta \\
&= (n-1)(I_{n-2} - I_n)
\end{aligned} \tag{12.26}$$

or

$$\int_0^\pi (\sin \theta)^n d\theta = \frac{n-1}{n} \int_0^\pi (\sin \theta)^{n-2} d\theta.$$

For even $n \geq 2$ we thus get

$$\int_0^\pi (\sin \theta)^n d\theta = \frac{(n-1)!!}{n!!} \int_0^\pi = \frac{(n-1)!!}{n!!} \pi \tag{12.27}$$

and for $n = 0$ we have

$$\int_0^\pi d\theta = \pi. \tag{12.28}$$

For odd n we find

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^\pi (\sin \theta)^n d\theta &= \frac{(n-1)!!}{n!!} \int_0^\pi \sin \theta d\theta \\
&= \frac{(n-1)!!}{n!!} \times 2.
\end{aligned} \tag{12.29}$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} d^d x &= \int_0^\infty dx x^{d-1} e^{-x^2} I_d \frac{1}{(d-2)!!} \\
I_d &= \begin{cases} (2\pi)^{\frac{d}{2}} & d \text{ even} \\ 2 \times (2\pi)^{\frac{d-1}{2}} & d \text{ odd} \end{cases}
\end{aligned} \tag{12.30}$$

On the other hand, integration by parts gives

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^\infty x^{d-1} e^{-x^2} dx &= -\frac{1}{2} \int_0^\infty x^{d-2} (-2xe^{-x^2}) dx \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} \left[x^{d-2} e^{-x^2} \right]_0^\infty + \frac{d-2}{2} \int_0^\infty x^{d-3} e^{-x^2} dx \\
&= \frac{d-2}{2} \int_0^\infty x^{d-3} e^{-x^2} dx \\
&= (d-2)!! J_d
\end{aligned} \tag{12.31}$$

where for d even

$$\begin{aligned}
J_d &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{d-2}{2}} \int_0^\infty x e^{-x^2} dx \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{d}{2}}
\end{aligned} \tag{12.32}$$

and d odd

$$\begin{aligned}
J_d &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{d-2}{2}} \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} dx \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{d-1}{2}} \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}.
\end{aligned} \tag{12.33}$$

Putting these together we have

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-\bar{x}^2} d^d x = \frac{1}{(d-2)!!} (d-2)!! I_d J_d = \pi^{\frac{d}{2}}. \tag{12.34}$$

12.2.3 The Volume of a d -sphere via Gaussian Integration

We can easily derive the volume of a three-sphere by writing the integral

$$I = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=0}^d x_i^2\right) dV. \tag{12.35}$$

two different ways. First of all, we use that the integral decomposes as

$$I = \prod_{i=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}x_i^2\right) dx_i \quad (12.36)$$

and using

$$\int_0^\infty \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}x^2\right) dx = (2\pi)^{1/2}. \quad (12.37)$$

we find

$$I = (2\pi)^{d/2} \quad (12.38)$$

Now we write the integral in spherical polar coordinates and use that the function

$$\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=0}^d x_i^2\right) \quad (12.39)$$

is rotationally invariant:

$$I = \int_0^\infty \int_{S^{d-1}(r)} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}r^2\right) r^{d-1} d\Omega dr = \left(\int_0^\infty \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}r^2\right) r^{d-1} dr\right) \left(\int_{S^{d-1}(1)} d\Omega\right). \quad (12.40)$$

Notice that on the LHS that the integration is over a three-spheres of radius r , but on the RHS the integration is over a three-sphere of radius $r = 1$. The integral

$$\int_{S^{d-1}(1)} d\Omega \quad (12.41)$$

is the volume of a three-sphere of unit radius.

We perform the integration over r ,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^\infty \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}r^2\right) r^{d-1} dr &= \int_0^\infty \exp(-u)(\sqrt{2}u^{1/2})^{d-2} du \\ &= 2^{(d-2)/2} \int_0^\infty \exp(-u)u^{d/2-1} du \\ &= 2^{(d-2)/2} \Gamma(d/2) \end{aligned} \quad (12.42)$$

where we have used

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{z-1} du \quad (12.43)$$

So that

$$\int_{S^{d-1}(1)} d\Omega = \frac{I}{2^{(d-2)/2}\Gamma(d/2)} = \frac{(2\pi)^{d/2}}{2^{(d-2)/2}\Gamma(d/2)}. \quad (12.44)$$

Finally

$$\int d\Omega_{d-1} = \frac{2(\pi)^{d/2}}{\Gamma(d/2)} \quad (12.45)$$

□

12.2.4 The Γ Function

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{z-1} du \quad (12.46)$$

We define the *beta* function by

$$B(p, q) = \int_0^1 u^{p-1} (1-u)^{q-1} du \quad (12.47)$$

We set $u = t/(1+t)$ so $du = dt/(1+t)^2$ and $t = u/(1-u)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} B(p, q) &= \int_0^\infty \left(\frac{t}{1+t}\right)^{p-1} \left(\frac{1}{1+t}\right)^{q-1} \frac{dt}{(1+t)^2} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{p-1}}{(1+t)^{p+q}} dt \end{aligned} \quad (12.48)$$

It is possible to express $B(p, q)$ in terms of gamma functions

$$\begin{aligned}
\Gamma(p)\Gamma(q) &= \int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{p-1} du \int_0^\infty e^{-t} t^{q-1} dt \\
&= \int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{p-1} \left(u^q \int_0^\infty e^{-uv} v^{q-1} dv \right) du \\
&= \int_0^\infty v^{q-1} \left(\int_0^\infty u^{p+q-1} e^{-u(1+v)} du \right) dv \\
&= \int_0^\infty v^{q-1} \left(\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{(1+v)^{p+q}} \tau^{p+q-1} e^{-\tau} d\tau \right) dv \\
&= \int_0^\infty \frac{v^{q-1}}{(1+v)^{p+q}} dv \int_0^\infty e^{-\tau} \tau^{p+q-1} d\tau \\
&= B(p, q)\Gamma(p+q).
\end{aligned} \tag{12.49}$$

So that

$$B(p, q) = \frac{\Gamma(p)\Gamma(q)}{\Gamma(p+q)}. \tag{12.50}$$

12.3 Renormalisation

12.4 Renormalisability of QED

12.4.1 Renormalisability to all orders

BPHZ theorem: All divergences can be removed by counterterms corresponding to superficially divergent 1PI amplitudes.

Appendix A

Appendix

A.1 Traces of Products of γ -Matrices

As we have already seen, when calculating Feynman diagrams and the resulting cross sections, one has to evaluate traces of certain combinations of γ -matrices. Here we collect useful theorems here, some of which have already been proved in the main text..

We will use the Dirac/Feynman slash notation: $a_\mu \gamma^\mu \equiv \not{a}$.

Theorem 1. The trace of an odd number of γ -matrices vanishes. So $\text{Tr} \not{a}_1 \cdots \not{a}_n = 0$ for odd number of terms.

Theorem 2. We have $a_\mu b_\nu \text{Tr} \gamma^\mu \gamma^\nu = 4a \cdot b$.

Theorem 3. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Tr} \gamma^{\mu_1} \cdots \gamma^{\mu_n} &= \eta^{\mu_1 \mu_2} \text{Tr} \gamma^{\mu_3} \cdots \gamma^{\mu_n} \\ &\quad - \eta^{\mu_1 \mu_3} \text{Tr} \gamma^{\mu_2} \gamma^{\mu_4} \cdots \gamma^{\mu_n} + \cdots \\ &\quad + \eta^{\mu_1 \mu_n} \text{Tr} \gamma^{\mu_2} \cdots \gamma^{\mu_{n-1}}. \end{aligned} \tag{A.1}$$

A special case is

$$\text{Tr} \not{a}_1 \not{a}_2 \not{a}_3 \not{a}_4 = 4(a_1 \cdot a_2 a_3 \cdot a_4 - a_1 \cdot a_3 a_2 \cdot a_4 + a_1 \cdot a_4 a_2 \cdot a_3). \tag{A.2}$$

Theorem 4. We have $\text{Tr} \gamma^5 = 0$.

Theorem 5. We have $\text{Tr} \gamma^5 \gamma^\mu \gamma^\nu = 0$.

Theorem 6. We have $a_\mu b_\nu c_\sigma d_\gamma Tr \gamma^5 \gamma^\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma = -4i \epsilon^{\mu\nu\sigma\gamma} a_\mu b_\nu c_\sigma d_\gamma$. Where $\epsilon^{\mu\nu\sigma\gamma}$ is the completely antisymmetric tensor: $\epsilon^{\mu\nu\sigma\gamma} = +1$ if $(\mu, \nu, \sigma, \gamma)$ is an even permutation of $(0, 1, 2, 3)$, $\epsilon^{\mu\nu\sigma\gamma} = -1$ if $(\mu, \nu, \sigma, \gamma)$ is an odd permutation of $(0, 1, 2, 3)$, and $\epsilon^{\mu\nu\sigma\gamma} = 0$ if any two indices are identical.

Theorem 7. We have $Tr \gamma_{\mu_1} \gamma_{\mu_2} \dots \gamma_{\mu_{2n}} = Tr \gamma_{\mu_{2n}} \dots \gamma_{\mu_1}$.

Theorem 8. We have

i) $\gamma_\mu \gamma^\mu = 4\mathbf{1}$

ii) $\gamma_\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\mu = -2\gamma^\nu$

iii) $\gamma_\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\mu = 4\eta^{\nu\sigma} \mathbf{1}$

iv) $\gamma_\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma \gamma^\mu = -2\gamma^\gamma \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\nu$

v) $\gamma_\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma \gamma^\delta \gamma^\mu = 2\gamma^\delta \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma + 2\gamma^\gamma \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\nu \gamma^\delta$

Proof.

1. See (4.31).

2. See (4.33).

3. We use $\gamma^\mu \gamma^\nu = -\gamma^\nu \gamma^\mu + 2\eta^{\mu\nu} \mathbf{1}$ to shift γ^{μ_1} to the right-hand side of γ^{μ_2} , giving

$$Tr \gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} = 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_2} Tr \gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} \gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n}$$

Doing it again we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} Tr \gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} &= 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_2} Tr \gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} (\gamma^{\mu_1} \gamma^{\mu_3}) \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} \\ &= 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_2} Tr \gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_3} Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} \gamma^{\mu_4} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} + Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} \gamma^{\mu_3} \gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} \end{aligned}$$

Repeating this (and remembering that n must be even by part 1)),

$$\begin{aligned} Tr \gamma^{\mu_1} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} &= 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_2} Tr \gamma^{\mu_3} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_3} Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} \gamma^{\mu_4} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} + \\ &+ 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_4} Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} \gamma^{\mu_3} \gamma^{\mu_5} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} - \dots \\ &+ 2\eta^{\mu_1 \mu_n} Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} \dots \gamma^{\mu_{n-1}} - Tr \gamma^{\mu_2} \dots \gamma^{\mu_n} \gamma^{\mu_1} \end{aligned}$$

Lastly we use the invariance of the trace under cyclic permutation to move γ^{μ_1} back to the left-hand side of the trace.

The special case was computed in (4.33)-(4.34). We use the above theorem 3 to prove it again,

$$\begin{aligned} Tr\gamma^{\mu_1}\gamma^{\mu_2}\gamma^{\mu_3}\gamma^{\mu_4} &= \eta^{\mu_1\mu_2}Tr\gamma^{\mu_3}\gamma^{\mu_4} - \eta^{\mu_1\mu_3}Tr\gamma^{\mu_2}\gamma^{\mu_4} + \eta^{\mu_1\mu_4}Tr\gamma^{\mu_2}\gamma^{\mu_3} \\ &= 4(\eta^{\mu_1\mu_2}\eta^{\mu_3\mu_4} - \eta^{\mu_1\mu_3}\eta^{\mu_2\mu_4} + \eta^{\mu_1\mu_4}\eta^{\mu_2\mu_3}) \end{aligned}$$

where we have used theorem 2. Contracting with $a_{\mu_1}a_{\mu_2}a_{\mu_3}a_{\mu_4}$ we obtain (A.2).

4. See (8.22).

5. See (8.21)-(8.23)

6. We evaluate

$$Tr\gamma^5\phi\psi\phi\psi = a_\mu b_\nu c_\sigma d_\gamma Tr\gamma^5\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma\gamma^\gamma$$

where summation over all repeated indices is implied. most terms do not contribute; if any two of the indices μ, ν, σ, γ take identical values, the trace will vanish. Take the first and third indices to be equal,

$$\begin{aligned} Tr\gamma^5\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu\gamma^\gamma &= Tr\gamma^5\gamma^\mu(-\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu + 2\eta^{\mu\nu}\mathbf{1})\gamma^\gamma \\ &= Tr\gamma^5(-\gamma^\mu\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu + 2\gamma^\mu\eta^{\mu\nu}\mathbf{1})\gamma^\gamma \\ &= -\eta^{\mu\mu}Tr\gamma^5\gamma^\nu\gamma^\gamma + 2\eta^{\mu\nu}Tr\gamma^5\gamma^\mu\gamma^\gamma \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

by theorem 5.

Thus only indices $(\mu, \nu, \sigma, \gamma)$ that are a permutation of $(0, 1, 2, 3)$ contribute. Let us evaluate the trace

$$\begin{aligned} Tr\gamma^5\gamma^0\gamma^1\gamma^2\gamma^3 &= Tr\gamma^5(-i\gamma^5) \\ &= -iTr\mathbf{1} \\ &= -4i \\ &= -4i\epsilon^{0123}. \end{aligned}$$

Since the four γ^μ matrices are mutually anticommuting, an odd permutation of the indices $(0, 1, 2, 3)$ introducing an additional minus sign.

□

7. We make use of the matrix \hat{C} , involved in charge conjugation. \hat{C} has the property $\hat{C}\gamma_\mu\hat{C}^{-1} = -\gamma_\mu^T$. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
Tr\gamma_{\mu_1}\gamma_{\mu_2}\cdots\gamma_{\mu_{2n}} &= Tr(\hat{C}\gamma_{\mu_1}\hat{C}^{-1})(\hat{C}\gamma_{\mu_2}\hat{C}^{-1})\cdots(\hat{C}\gamma_{\mu_{2n}}\hat{C}^{-1}) \\
&= (-1)^{2n} Tr\gamma_{\mu_1}^T\gamma_{\mu_2}^T\cdots\gamma_{\mu_{2n}}^T \\
&= Tr[\gamma_{\mu_{2n}}\cdots\gamma_{\mu_1}]^T \\
&= Tr\gamma_{\mu_{2n}}\cdots\gamma_{\mu_1}.
\end{aligned}$$

8.

i) $\gamma_\mu\gamma^\mu = \frac{1}{2}(\gamma_\mu\gamma^\mu + \gamma^\mu\gamma_\mu) = \frac{1}{2}2g^\mu{}_\mu 1 = 41$

ii) In the following we use i)

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu &= \gamma_\mu(2\eta^{\mu\nu} - \gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu) \\
&= 2\gamma^\nu - 4\gamma^\nu \\
&= -2\gamma^\nu.
\end{aligned}$$

iii) In the following we use ii)

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma\gamma^\mu &= \gamma_\mu\gamma^\nu(2\eta^{\mu\sigma} - \gamma^\mu\gamma^\sigma) \\
&= 2\gamma^\sigma\gamma^\nu - \gamma_\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu\gamma^\sigma \\
&= 2\gamma^\sigma\gamma^\nu + 2\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma \\
&= 2(2\eta^{\nu\sigma} - \gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma) + 2\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma \\
&= 4\eta^{\nu\sigma}
\end{aligned}$$

iv) In the following we use iii)

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\mu &= \gamma_\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma(2\eta^{\mu\gamma} - \gamma^\mu\gamma^\gamma) \\
&= 2\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma - (\gamma_\mu\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma\gamma^\mu)\gamma^\gamma \\
&= 2\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\nu\gamma^\sigma - 4\eta^{\nu\sigma}\gamma^\gamma \\
&= 2\gamma^\gamma(2\eta^{\nu\sigma} - \gamma^\sigma\gamma^\nu) - 4\eta^{\nu\sigma}\gamma^\gamma \\
&= -2\gamma^\gamma\gamma^\sigma\gamma^\nu.
\end{aligned}$$

□

v)

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma \gamma^\delta \gamma^\mu &= \gamma_\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma (2\eta^{\mu\delta} - \gamma^\mu \gamma^\delta) \\
&= 2\gamma^\delta \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma - (\gamma_\mu \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma \gamma^\mu) \gamma^\delta \\
&= 2\gamma^\delta \gamma^\nu \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\gamma + 2\gamma^\gamma \gamma^\sigma \gamma^\nu \gamma^\delta.
\end{aligned}$$

□

A.2 Complete Set of 4×4 Matrices

Any 4×4 matrix can be written as

$$\sum_{A=1}^{16} a_A \hat{\Gamma}_A \tag{A.3}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\Gamma}_A &= \mathbf{I}, \\
&\gamma_0, i\gamma_1, i\gamma_2, i\gamma_3, \\
&i\gamma_2\gamma_3, i\gamma_3\gamma_1, i\gamma_1\gamma_2, \gamma_1\gamma_0, \gamma_2\gamma_0, \gamma_3\gamma_0, \\
&\gamma_1\gamma_2\gamma_3, i\gamma_1\gamma_2\gamma_0, i\gamma_3\gamma_1\gamma_0, i\gamma_2\gamma_3\gamma_0 \\
&i\gamma_1\gamma_2\gamma_3\gamma_0
\end{aligned} \tag{A.4}$$

Proof:

Note

$$\hat{\Gamma}_A^2 = \mathbf{I} \quad (A = 1, \dots, 16) \tag{A.5}$$

For all $\hat{\Gamma}_A$ but \mathbf{I} there exists a $\hat{\Gamma}_B$ with

$$\hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_B = -\hat{\Gamma}_A \tag{A.6}$$

The trace of all $\hat{\Gamma}_A$ ($A = 2, \dots, 16$) are zero,

$$Tr(\hat{\Gamma}_A) = -Tr(\hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_B) = -Tr(\hat{\Gamma}_B^2 \hat{\Gamma}_A) = -Tr(\hat{\Gamma}_A).$$

A.3 Linear independence

Say

$$\sum_{A=1}^{16} a_A \hat{\Gamma}_A = 0.$$

Multiply this sum from the right by $\hat{\Gamma}_B$,

$$a_B \mathbf{I} + \sum_{A \neq B} a_A \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_B = 0. \quad (\text{A.7})$$

Then take the trace

$$4a_B + \sum_{A \neq B} a_A \text{Tr}(\hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_B) = 0. \quad (\text{A.8})$$

Now from (A.4) we see that $\hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_B = \text{Const.} \hat{\Gamma}_C$. In the case where $A \neq B$, $\hat{\Gamma}_C \neq \mathbf{I}$. This implies in (A.8) that $a_B = 0$.

A.4 Expansion of 4×4

Each 4×4 matrix can be expanded as

$$\hat{X} = \sum_{A=1}^{16} x_A \hat{\Gamma}_A. \quad (\text{A.9})$$

This is evident since 4×4 matrices represents a 16-dimension space and the $\hat{\Gamma}_A$ are linearly independent. The coefficients are then given by

$$x_B = \frac{1}{4} \text{Tr}(\hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{X}).$$

□

A.5 Unitary Equivalence of Representations of the Dirac Algebra

All representations of the Dirac algebra $\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu + \gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu = 2\eta^{\mu\nu}\mathbf{I}$ which satisfy $\gamma^{0\dagger} = \gamma^0$, $\gamma^{i\dagger} = -\gamma^i$ are unitary equivalent.

Proof: The proof is split into five parts.

i) First we prove that each 4×4 matrix which commutes with all $\hat{\Gamma}_A$ is a multiple of \mathbf{I} . Consider such a the matrix which write

$$\hat{X} = x_B \hat{\Gamma}_B + \sum_{A \neq B} x_A \hat{\Gamma}_A \quad (\text{A.10})$$

where we have picked out a particular matrix which is not \mathbf{I} . We choose $\hat{\Gamma}_C$ such that

$$\hat{\Gamma}_C \hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{\Gamma}_C = -\hat{\Gamma}_B. \quad (\text{A.11})$$

Since \hat{X} comutes wth all $\hat{\Gamma}_A$,

$$\hat{X} = \hat{\Gamma}_C \hat{X} \hat{\Gamma}_C$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_B \hat{\Gamma}_B + \sum_{A \neq B} x_A \hat{\Gamma}_A &= x_B \hat{\Gamma}_C \hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{\Gamma}_C + \sum_{A \neq B} x_A \hat{\Gamma}_C \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_C \\ &= x_B \hat{\Gamma}_C \hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{\Gamma}_C + \sum_{A \neq B} x_A (\pm \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_C) \hat{\Gamma}_C \\ &= -x_B \hat{\Gamma}_B + \sum_{A \neq B} (\pm) x_A \hat{\Gamma}_A \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.12})$$

where we have used $\hat{\Gamma}_C \hat{\Gamma}_A = (\pm) \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_C$ (this established by inspection (A.4)). Next multiply by $\hat{\Gamma}_B$ and take the trace

$$4x_B + \sum_{A \neq B} x_A \text{Tr}(\hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_B) = -4x_B + \sum_{A \neq B} (\pm) x_A \text{Tr}(\hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{\Gamma}_B) \quad (\text{A.13})$$

implying

$$x_B = -x_B = 0.$$

So we conclude that

$$\hat{X} = x_1 \mathbf{I}. \quad (\text{A.14})$$

This result is actually just a special case of Schur's lemma which states that every matrix which commutes with every element of an irreducible representation must be a multiple of the identity matrix; we know 4×4 matrix representations of the Dirac algebra are irreducible as there are no lower dimensional representations.

ii) Let γ_μ and γ'_μ be two representations of the Dirac algebra and $\hat{\Gamma}_A, \hat{\Gamma}'_A$ are respectively their basis. We wish to prove that

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_A \hat{S} = \hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}_A \quad (\text{A.15})$$

where

$$\hat{S} = \sum_{B=1}^{16} \hat{\Gamma}'_B \hat{F} \hat{\Gamma}_B \quad (\text{A.16})$$

and \hat{F} is an arbitrary 4×4 matrix. To this end, consider the matrix

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_A \hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}_A = \sum_{B=1}^{16} \hat{\Gamma}'_A \hat{\Gamma}'_B \hat{F} \hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{\Gamma}_A. \quad (\text{A.17})$$

By inspection, from (A.4) we have $\hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{\Gamma}_A = \alpha_C \hat{\Gamma}_C$ where $\alpha_C \in \{\pm 1, \pm i\}$.

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_B \hat{\Gamma}'_A = \alpha_C \hat{\Gamma}'_C. \quad (\text{A.18})$$

Multiply from the right by $\hat{\Gamma}'_A$

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_B = \alpha_C \hat{\Gamma}'_C \hat{\Gamma}'_A$$

then multiply from the right by $\hat{\Gamma}'_C$

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_C \hat{\Gamma}'_B = \alpha_C \hat{\Gamma}'_A$$

and from the left by $\hat{\Gamma}'_B$ gives

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_A \hat{\Gamma}'_B = \frac{1}{\alpha_C} \hat{\Gamma}'_C. \quad (\text{A.19})$$

Substituting this into (A.17) then gives

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_A \hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}'_A = \sum_{C=1}^{16} \left(\frac{1}{\alpha_C} \hat{\Gamma}'_C \right) \hat{F} (\alpha_C \hat{\Gamma}'_C) = \hat{S} \quad (\text{A.20})$$

proving (A.15).

Suppose we could choose \hat{F} (recall \hat{F} is completely arbitrary) so that \hat{S} is non-singular, we would then have in particular

$$\hat{\Gamma}'_2 = \hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}'_2 \hat{S}^{-1}, \quad \hat{\Gamma}'_3 = \hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}'_3 \hat{S}^{-1}, \quad \hat{\Gamma}'_4 = \hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}'_4 \hat{S}^{-1}, \quad \hat{\Gamma}'_5 = \hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}'_5 \hat{S}^{-1}$$

equivalently

$$\gamma'_\mu = \hat{S} \gamma_\mu \hat{S}^{-1}.$$

The next two steps are to prove we can choose \hat{F} so the above conditions for \hat{S} are fulfilled. In the final step we show that the additional conditions $\gamma_0 = \gamma_0^\dagger$, $\gamma_i = -\gamma_i^\dagger$, $\gamma'_0 = \gamma_0'^\dagger$, $\gamma'_i = -\gamma_i'^\dagger$ imply that \hat{S} can be chosen to be unitary, proving the entire result.

iii) The matrix \hat{F} can be chosen so that \hat{S} does not vanish. We prove this by contraction. Say $\hat{S} = 0$ held for all choices of \hat{F} , then

$$0 = (\hat{S})_{\mu\rho} = \sum_{B=1}^{16} \sum_{\alpha,\beta=1}^4 (\hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\alpha} (\hat{F})_{\alpha\beta} (\hat{\Gamma}_B)_{\beta\rho}. \quad (\text{A.21})$$

for all μ and ρ . Now let us choose \hat{F} such that a single element has the value 1 with all other elements being zero. Say it is the element $(\hat{F})_{\nu\sigma}$ that is equal to 1, then (A.21) reads

$$\sum_{B=1}^{16} (\hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\nu} (\hat{\Gamma}_B)_{\sigma\rho} = 0 \quad (\text{A.22})$$

This equation can be written for all possible choices of ν and σ , so we can infer

$$\sum_{B=1}^{16} (\hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\nu} \hat{\Gamma}_B = 0 \quad (\text{A.23})$$

holds for all μ and ν . Since $\hat{\Gamma}_B^2 = \mathbf{I}$ this would imply

$$\sum_{B=1}^{16} (\hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\nu} = 0 \quad \text{for all } \mu, \nu. \quad (\text{A.24})$$

As $(\hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\nu}$ cannot be equal to zero simultaneously, we have a contradiction to the linear independence of the $\hat{\Gamma}_B$.

iv) Now we prove that \hat{S} is not singular with appropriate choice of \hat{F} . To this end construct

$$\hat{T} = \sum_{B=1}^{16} \hat{\Gamma}_B \hat{G} \hat{\Gamma}'_B \quad (\text{A.25})$$

where \hat{G} is arbitrary. Obviously we have

$$\hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{T} = \hat{T} \hat{\Gamma}'_A \quad (\text{A.26})$$

(same argument as in iii) which together with (A.15) implies

$$(\hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{T}) \hat{S} = (\hat{T} \hat{\Gamma}'_A) \hat{S} = \hat{T} (\hat{\Gamma}'_A \hat{S}) = \hat{T} (\hat{S} \hat{\Gamma}_A)$$

i.e.

$$\hat{\Gamma}_A (\hat{T} \hat{S}) = (\hat{T} \hat{S}) \hat{\Gamma}_A, \quad (\text{A.27})$$

accordingly $\hat{T} \hat{S}$ must be a multiple of the identity

$$\hat{T} \hat{S} = k \mathbf{I}. \quad (\text{A.28})$$

Obviously we can choose \hat{G} so that $\hat{T} \neq 0$ (same argument as iii). With the same kind of choice of \hat{F} as in part iv) we will now show that we must have $k \neq 0$, and hence that \hat{S} is not singular! We prove it by contradiction

$$\sum_{B=1}^{16} \hat{T} \hat{\Gamma}'_B \hat{F} \hat{\Gamma}_B = 0 \quad (\text{A.29})$$

with the choice of $(\hat{F})_{\nu\rho} = 1$ with all other terms zero,

$$\sum_{B=1}^{16} (\hat{T} \hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\nu} (\hat{\Gamma}_B)_{\rho\sigma} = 0 \quad (\text{A.30})$$

or

$$\sum_{B=1}^{16} (\hat{T} \hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\nu} \hat{\Gamma}_B = 0. \quad (\text{A.31})$$

From $\hat{\Gamma}'_A{}^2 = \mathbf{I}$ and the fact that $(\hat{T} \hat{\Gamma}'_B)_{\mu\nu}$ cannot all be simultaneously zero as $\hat{\Gamma}'_1 = \mathbf{I}$ and $\hat{T} \neq 0$. This is in contradiction to the linear independence of the $\hat{\Gamma}_B$.

v) We now show that in the case of

$$\gamma_0 = \gamma_0^\dagger, \quad \gamma_i = -\gamma_i^\dagger, \quad \gamma'_0 = \gamma_0^\dagger, \quad \gamma'_i = -\gamma_i^\dagger,$$

equivalently

$$\gamma_\mu^\dagger = \eta_{\mu\mu} \gamma_\mu, \quad \gamma'_\mu{}^\dagger = \eta_{\mu\mu} \gamma'_\mu, \quad (\text{A.32})$$

then \hat{S} can be chosen as a unitary operator. To see this put $\hat{V} \equiv (\det \hat{S})^{-1} \hat{S}$ then

$$\gamma'_\mu = \hat{V} \gamma_\mu \hat{V}^{-1}, \quad \det \hat{V} = 1. \quad (\text{A.33})$$

Let us see if there exist another choice for \hat{V} . We must have $\det \hat{V}_1 = \det \hat{V}_2 = 1$ and

$$\gamma'_\mu = \hat{V}_1 \gamma_\mu \hat{V}_1^{-1} = \hat{V}_2 \gamma_\mu \hat{V}_2^{-1}. \quad (\text{A.34})$$

Eq (A.34) implies

$$\hat{V}_1 \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{V}_1^{-1} = \hat{V}_2 \hat{\Gamma}_A \hat{V}_2^{-1}, \quad (\text{A.35})$$

for example

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{V}_1(i\gamma_1\gamma_2)\hat{V}_1^{-1} &= i(\hat{V}_1\gamma_1\hat{V}_1^{-1})(\hat{V}_1\gamma_2\hat{V}_1^{-1}) \\
&= i(\hat{V}_2\gamma_1\hat{V}_2^{-1})(\hat{V}_2\gamma_2\hat{V}_2^{-1}) \\
&= \hat{V}_2(i\gamma_1\gamma_2)\hat{V}_2^{-1}.
\end{aligned} \tag{A.36}$$

Eq (A.35) rearranged becomes

$$(\hat{V}_2^{-1}\hat{V}_1)\hat{\Gamma}_A = \hat{\Gamma}_A(\hat{V}_2^{-1}\hat{V}_1). \tag{A.37}$$

By result i) (Schur's lemma)

$$\hat{V}_2^{-1}\hat{V}_1 = k'\mathbf{I}$$

hence

$$\hat{V}_1 = k'\hat{V}_2. \tag{A.38}$$

As $\det \hat{V}_2 = \det \hat{V}_1 = k'^4 \det \hat{V}_2$, we must have $k' \in \{\pm 1, \pm i\}$. Now take the Hermitian conjugate of (A.33),

$$\gamma_\mu'^\dagger = (\hat{V}^{-1})^\dagger \gamma_\mu^\dagger \hat{V}^\dagger \tag{A.39}$$

then by means of (A.32),

$$\gamma_\mu' = (\hat{V}^\dagger)^{-1} \gamma_\mu \hat{V}^\dagger \tag{A.40}$$

We see that $(\hat{V}^\dagger)^{-1}$ fulfills (A.33) as does \hat{V} . From (A.38) ($k' \in \{\pm 1, \pm i\}$) it follows

$$\begin{aligned}
(\hat{V}^\dagger)^{-1} &= k'\hat{V}, \quad \hat{V}^\dagger = k'^{-1}\hat{V}^{-1} \\
\hat{V}^\dagger\hat{V} &= k'^{-1}\mathbf{I}.
\end{aligned} \tag{A.41}$$

Since

$$(\hat{V}^\dagger\hat{V})_{ii} = \sum_j (\hat{V}^\dagger)_{ij}(\hat{V})_{ji} = \sum_j |V_{ji}|^2 = k'^{-1} \tag{A.42}$$

Hence k'^{-1} must be real and positive, i.e. $k'^{-1} = 1$. Hence,

$$\hat{V}^\dagger \hat{V} = \mathbf{I}. \quad (\text{A.43})$$

□

A.6 Coefficients of Infinitesimal Lorentz Transformation

We prove that the

$$\hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{i}{2}(\gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta - \gamma_\beta\gamma_\alpha)$$

fulfill ()

Proof: Insert the above expression in the RHS of ()

$$\begin{aligned} [\gamma^\nu, \hat{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta}] &= \frac{i}{2} [\gamma^\nu, [\gamma_\alpha, \gamma_\beta]] \\ &= \frac{i}{2} \left([\gamma^\nu, \gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta] - [\gamma^\nu, \gamma_\beta\gamma_\alpha] \right) \\ &= \frac{i}{2} \left(2 [\gamma^\nu, \gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta] - 2 [\gamma^\nu, \eta_{\alpha\beta}] \right) \\ &= i[\gamma^\nu, \gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.44})$$

where we used $\gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta + \gamma_\beta\gamma_\alpha = 2\eta_{\alpha\beta}$. Furthermore we have

$$\begin{aligned} i[\gamma^\nu, \gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta] &= i(\gamma^\nu\gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta - \gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta\gamma^\nu) \\ &= i(\gamma^\nu\gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta - 2\eta^\nu_\beta\gamma_\alpha + \gamma_\alpha\gamma^\nu\gamma_\beta) \\ &= i(\gamma^\nu\gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta - 2\eta^\nu_\beta\gamma_\alpha + 2\eta^\nu_\alpha\gamma_\beta - \gamma^\nu\gamma_\alpha\gamma_\beta) \\ &= 2i(\eta^\nu_\alpha\gamma_\beta - \eta^\nu_\beta\gamma_\alpha). \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.45})$$

□

A.7 Proof of Relation $\hat{S}^{-1} = \gamma_0 \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma_0$

We show that for

$$\hat{S} = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{4}\omega\hat{\sigma}_{\mu\nu}(\hat{I}_{\mathbf{n}})^{\mu\nu}\right)$$

the inverse operator is given by

$$\hat{S}^{-1} = \gamma_0 \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma_0 \tag{A.46}$$

Proof:

(i) Rotations:

For spacial rotations we can write:

$$\hat{S} = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{4}\omega^{ij}\hat{\sigma}_{ij}\right). \tag{A.47}$$

The $\hat{\sigma}_{ij}$ are Hermitian because

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\sigma}_{ij}^\dagger &= -\frac{i}{2}\left\{(\gamma_i\gamma_j)^\dagger - (\gamma_j\gamma_i)^\dagger\right\} \\ &= -\frac{i}{2}\left\{\gamma_j\gamma_i - \gamma_i\gamma_j\right\} \\ &= \hat{\sigma}_{ij}. \end{aligned} \tag{A.48}$$

This implies

$$\hat{S}^\dagger = \exp\left(\frac{i}{4}\omega^{ij}\hat{\sigma}_{ij}^\dagger\right) = \exp\left(\frac{i}{4}\omega^{ij}\hat{\sigma}_{ij}\right). \tag{A.49}$$

Obviously, γ_0 commutes with $\hat{\sigma}_{ij}$ and thus with \hat{S}^\dagger . Hence we have

$$\gamma_0 \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma_0 = \hat{S}^\dagger = \hat{S}^{-1}. \tag{A.50}$$

(ii) Lorentz boosts:

Given that a general Lorentz transformation can be decomposed into first a rotation, a Lorentz boost along the x -direction and then undoing the rotation, and given that $\gamma^i \gamma^0 + \gamma^0 \gamma^i = 0$, it suffices to prove the result for a simple boost along the x -direction. For this transformation we have

$$\hat{S} = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{2}\omega\hat{\sigma}_{01}\right)$$

$\hat{\sigma}_{01}$ is antihermitian because

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{\sigma}_{01}^\dagger &= -\frac{i}{2}\{(\gamma_0\gamma_1)^\dagger - (\gamma_1\gamma_0)^\dagger\} \\ &= \frac{i}{2}\{\gamma_1\gamma_0 - \gamma_0\gamma_1\} \\ &= -\hat{\sigma}_{01}.\end{aligned}\tag{A.51}$$

Therefore

$$\hat{S}^\dagger = \exp\left(\frac{i}{2}\omega\hat{\sigma}_{01}^\dagger\right) = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{2}\omega\hat{\sigma}_{01}\right) = \hat{S}.\tag{A.52}$$

From

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma_0\hat{\sigma}_{01} &= \frac{i}{2}\{\gamma_0\gamma_0\gamma_1 - \gamma_0\gamma_1\gamma_0\} \\ &= \frac{i}{2}\{\gamma_1\gamma_0\gamma_0 - \gamma_0\gamma_1\gamma_0\} \\ &= \hat{\sigma}_{10}\gamma_0 = -\hat{\sigma}_{01}\gamma_0.\end{aligned}\tag{A.53}$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_0 \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma_0 &= \gamma_0 \left[\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right)^n \right] \gamma_0 \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \gamma_0 \left(-\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right)^n \gamma_0 \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \gamma_0 \left(-\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right) \gamma_0 \gamma_0 \left(-\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right) \gamma_0 \cdots \gamma_0 \left(-\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right) \gamma_0 \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(+\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right)^n \\
&= \exp \left(\frac{i}{2} \omega \hat{\sigma}_{01} \right) = \hat{S}^{-1}.
\end{aligned} \tag{A.54}$$

□

A.8 Proof of the Completeness Relation for spinors

A.8.1 Proof of completeness relation: $\omega^{r\dagger}(\epsilon_r \mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\epsilon_{r'} \mathbf{p}) = \delta_{rr'}(E/m_0)$

Proof:

We calculate some examples

$r = 1, r' = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{E + m_0}{2m_0} \left(1, 0, \frac{p_z}{E + m_0}, \frac{p_-}{E + m_0} \right) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \frac{p_z}{E + m_0} \\ \frac{p_-}{E + m_0} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{E + m_0}{2m_0} \left\{ 1 + \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{(E + m_0)^2} \right\} \\
&= \frac{E + m_0}{2m_0} \left\{ \frac{(E + m_0)^2 + \mathbf{p}^2}{(E + m_0)^2} \right\} \\
&= \left\{ \frac{2E + 2m_0 E}{2m_0(E + m_0)} \right\} \\
&= \frac{E}{m_0} \delta_{11}
\end{aligned} \tag{A.55}$$

$r = 2, r' = 4$:

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{E + m_0}{2m_0} \left(0, 1, \frac{p_+}{E + m_0}, -\frac{p_z}{E + m_0} \right) \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{p_-}{E + m_0} \\ \frac{p_z}{E + m_0} \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{E + m_0}{2m_0} \left\{ \frac{p_z}{E + m_0} - \frac{p_z}{E + m_0} \right\} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.56})$$

$r = 4, r' = 4$:

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{E + m_0}{2m_0} \left(1, 0, \frac{p_+}{E + m_0}, -\frac{p_z}{E + m_0} \right) \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{p_-}{E + m_0} \\ \frac{p_z}{E + m_0} \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{E}{m_0} \delta_{44} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.57})$$

The other combinations can be calculated similarly.

□

A.9 Integral representation for the step function

We show that

$$\Theta(\tau) = -\frac{1}{2\pi i} \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega \frac{e^{-i\omega\tau}}{\omega + i\epsilon} \quad (\text{A.58})$$

Proof: We can evaluate the integral by means of complex integration in the complex ω -plane. This can be done if we can show if the contribution from the upper (lower), infinitely distant half circle vanishes. Let I_R be the integral along the upper (lower) semicircle, then we can write

$$\begin{aligned} I_R &= \lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^{\pm\pi} [zf(z)] \frac{dz}{z} \\ &\leq \lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \text{Max}[zf(z)] \int_0^{\pm\pi} \frac{dz}{z} \\ &= \pm i\pi \lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \text{Max}[zf(z)] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.59})$$

Hence, if we can show that $\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \text{Max} [|zf(z)|] \rightarrow 0$ then the integral over the semicircle can be ignored and the integral along the real line can be converted into a closed contour integral.

For $\tau < 0$ we show that the contribution from the upper, infinitely distant half circle vanishes

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(R, \theta) &= \frac{e^{-i\omega\tau}}{\omega} \\
 &= \frac{e^{-iR\tau(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)}}{r e^{i\theta}} \\
 &= e^{-iR\tau \cos\theta} \frac{e^{+R\tau \sin\theta}}{R e^{i\theta}}
 \end{aligned} \tag{A.60}$$

and

$$\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} |Rf(R, \theta)| = e^{-R|\tau| \sin\theta} = 0$$

For $\tau < 0$ we close the contour in the upper half plane. There is only a first order pole at $-i\epsilon$. Therefore this integral will be zero.

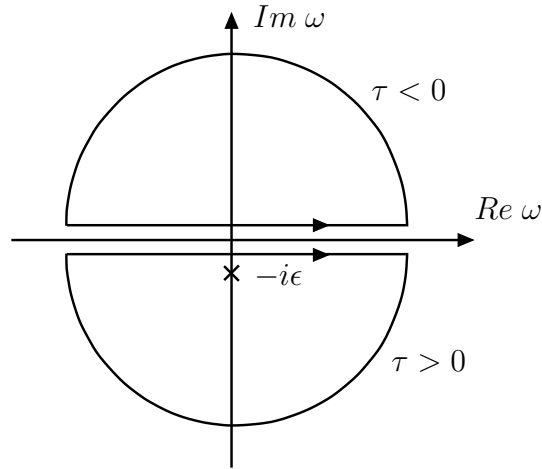


Figure A.1:

In the case $\tau > 0$ for similar reasons one can close the contour by means of an infinitely large half circle below the real axis. Cauchy's integral theorem says that the integrand at the pole

$$\begin{aligned}
\Theta(\tau > 0) &= -\frac{1}{2\pi i}(-1)2\pi i \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \text{Res} \left[\frac{e^{-i\omega\tau}}{\omega + i\epsilon} \right] \\
&= e^{-\epsilon\tau} \Big|_{\epsilon=0} = 1.
\end{aligned} \tag{A.61}$$

where we have a minus sign coming from the clockwise direction of the integration.

□

A.10 Averaging over Spin

We have

$$(\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma}_1 u(i)) (\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma}_2 u(i))^* = (\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma}_1 u(i)) (\bar{u}(i) \hat{\Gamma}_2 u(f)) \tag{A.62}$$

where

$$\hat{\Gamma} = \gamma^0 \hat{\Gamma}^\dagger \gamma^0. \tag{A.63}$$

Proof:

First note what the complex conjugate $(\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma} u(i))^*$ of the number $\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma} u(i)$ is equal to

$$\begin{aligned}
(\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma} u(i))^\dagger &= (\bar{u}^\dagger(f) \gamma^0 \hat{\Gamma} u(i))^\dagger \\
&= u(i)^\dagger \hat{\Gamma}^\dagger \gamma^{0\dagger} u^\dagger(f) \\
&= \bar{u}(i) (\gamma^0 \hat{\Gamma}^\dagger \gamma^0) u(f) \\
&= \bar{u}(i) \hat{\Gamma} u(f)
\end{aligned} \tag{A.64}$$

where we have used $\gamma^{0\dagger} = \gamma^0$ and $(\gamma^0)^2 = 1$.

$$(\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma}_1 u(i)) (\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma}_2 u(i))^* = (\bar{u}(f) \hat{\Gamma}_1 u(i)) (\bar{u}(i) \hat{\Gamma}_2 u(f)) \tag{A.65}$$

□

The barred matrices $\hat{\Gamma}$ can be directly calculated for a number of operators:

- (i) $\overline{\gamma^\mu} = \gamma^0 \gamma^{\mu\dagger} \gamma^0 = \gamma^\mu$
- (ii) $\overline{i\gamma^5} = i\gamma^5$
- (iii) $\overline{\gamma^\mu \gamma^5} = \gamma^\mu \gamma^5$
- (iv) $\overline{\gamma^\mu \gamma^\nu \dots \gamma^\lambda} = \gamma^\lambda \dots \gamma^\nu \gamma^\mu$

Proof:

(i) First

$$\gamma^0 \gamma^{0\dagger} \gamma^0 = \gamma^0 \gamma^0 \gamma^0 = \gamma^0$$

and secondly

$$\gamma^0 \gamma^{i\dagger} \gamma^0 = -\gamma^0 \gamma^i \gamma^0 = \gamma^i \gamma^0 \gamma^0 = \gamma^i.$$

(ii) As $i\gamma^5 = -\gamma^0 \gamma^1 \gamma^2 \gamma^3$ and

$$\overline{i\gamma^5} = -\gamma^0 \gamma^{3\dagger} \gamma^{2\dagger} \gamma^{1\dagger} \gamma^{0\dagger} \gamma^0 = +\gamma^0 \gamma^3 \gamma^2 \gamma^1 = -\gamma^0 \gamma^1 \gamma^2 \gamma^3 = i\gamma^5.$$

(iii) Similar to (ii).

(iv) Proved using (i).

□

A.11 Spin summation of the general squared matrix element

$$\sum_{s_f s_i} (\overline{u}(p_f, s_f) \hat{\Gamma}_1 u(p_i, s_i)) (\overline{u}(p_f, s_f) \hat{\Gamma}_2 u(p_i, s_i))^* = Tr \left[\hat{\Gamma}_1 \frac{p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \hat{\Gamma}_2 \frac{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right] \quad (\text{A.66})$$

A special case is

$$\sum_{s_f s_i} |\overline{u}(p_f, s_f) \hat{\Gamma} u(p_i, s_i)|^2 = Tr \left[\hat{\Gamma} \frac{p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \hat{\Gamma} \frac{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right] \quad (\text{A.67})$$

Proof: We use Einstein's summation convention.

$$\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{s_f s_i} \left(\bar{u}_\alpha(p_f, s_f) (\hat{\Gamma}_1)_{\alpha\beta} u_\beta(p_i, s_i) \right) \left(\bar{u}_\gamma(p_i, s_i) (\hat{\Gamma}_2)_{\gamma\delta} u_\delta(p_f, s_f) \right) \\
&= \sum_{s_f} \bar{u}_\alpha(p_f, s_f) (\hat{\Gamma}_1)_{\alpha\beta} \left(\sum_{s_i} u_\beta(p_i, s_i) \bar{u}_\gamma(p_i, s_i) \right) \hat{\Gamma}_{\gamma\tau} u_\tau(p_f, s_f) \\
&= \sum_{s_f} \bar{u}_\alpha(p_f, s_f) \left(\hat{\Gamma}_1 \frac{p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \hat{\Gamma}_2 \right)_{\alpha\beta} u_\beta(p_f, s_f) \\
&= \sum_{r=1}^4 \epsilon_r \bar{\omega}_\alpha^r(p_f) \left(\hat{\Gamma}_1 \frac{p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \hat{\Gamma}_2 \right)_{\alpha\beta} \left(\frac{p_{f\mu} \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \right)_{\beta\gamma} \omega_\gamma^r(p_f) \\
&= Tr \left[\hat{\Gamma}_1 \frac{p_{i\mu} \gamma^\mu + m_0}{2m_0} \hat{\Gamma}_2 \frac{p_{f\nu} \gamma^\nu + m_0}{2m_0} \right] \tag{A.68}
\end{aligned}$$

□

A.12 Proof of Equations (3.51) and (3.52)

$$\Theta(t - t') \psi^{(-E)}(x') = -i \int d^3x S_F(x' - x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(-E)}(x)$$

We prove (3.51):

$$\Theta(t' - t) \psi^{(+E)}(x') = i \int d^3x S_F(x' - x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(+E)}(x)$$

Proof:

Any wave packet of positive energy may be expressed in terms of normalised plane waves

$$\psi^{(+E)}(x) = \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_p}} \sum_{r=1}^2 b(p, r) \omega^r(\mathbf{p}) \exp(-i\epsilon_r p \cdot x) \tag{A.69}$$

where $E_p = \sqrt{\mathbf{p}^2 + m_0^2}$ and $\epsilon_1 = \epsilon_2 = +1..$ We will need to make use of the orthogonality condition

$$\omega^{r\dagger}(\epsilon_r \mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\epsilon_{r'} \mathbf{p}) = \frac{E_p}{m_0} \delta_{rr'}. \tag{A.70}$$

We start with the plane-wave representation of the Feynman propagator

$$S_F(x' - x) = -i\Theta(t' - t) \int d^3p \sum_{r=1}^2 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) + i\Theta(t - t') \int d^3p \sum_{r=3}^4 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) \quad (\text{A.71})$$

where

$$\psi_p^r = \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_p}} \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \omega^r(\mathbf{p}) \exp(-i\epsilon_r p \cdot x). \quad (\text{A.72})$$

Inserting the above into the RHS of ()

$$\begin{aligned} & i \int d^3x S_F(x' - x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(+E)}(x) \\ = & \Theta(t' - t) \int d^3x \int d^3p \sum_{r=1}^2 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(+E)}(x) \\ & - \Theta(t' - t) \int d^3x \int d^3p \sum_{r=3}^4 \psi_p^r(x') \bar{\psi}_p^r(x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(+E)}(x) \\ = & \Theta(t' - t) \int d^3x \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \sum_{r=1}^2 \omega^r(p) \bar{\omega}^r(p) \gamma_0 \exp[-i\epsilon_r p \cdot (x' - x)] \\ & \times \int \frac{d^3p'}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_{p'}} \sum_{r'=1}^2 b(p', r') \omega^{r'}(p') \exp(-i\epsilon_{r'} p' \cdot x) \\ & - \Theta(t' - t) \int d^3x \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \sum_{r=3}^4 \omega^r(p) \bar{\omega}^r(p) \gamma_0 \exp[-i\epsilon_r p \cdot (x' - x)] \\ & \times \int \frac{d^3p'}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_{p'}} \sum_{r'=1}^2 b(p', r') \omega^{r'}(p') \exp(-i\epsilon_{r'} p' \cdot x) \\ = & \Theta(t' - t) \int \frac{d^3p d^3p'}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_p}} \sum_{r=1,2; r'=1,2} \omega^r(p) \omega^{r\dagger}(p) \omega^{r'}(p') b(p', r') \exp(-i\epsilon_{r'} p' \cdot x) \\ & \times \int \frac{d^3x}{(2\pi)^3} \exp[i(\epsilon_r p - \epsilon_{r'} p') \cdot x] \\ - & \Theta(t' - t) \int \frac{d^3p d^3p'}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{m_0}{E_p} \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_{p'}}} \sum_{r=3,4; r'=1,2} \omega^r(p) \omega^{r\dagger}(p) \omega^{r'}(p') b(p', r') \exp(-i\epsilon_r p \cdot x') \\ & \times \int \frac{d^3x}{(2\pi)^3} \exp[i(\epsilon_r p - \epsilon_{r'} p') \cdot x] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.73})$$

Performing the x integration in the Θ term yields

$$\exp[i(E_p - E_{p'})t]\delta^3(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}') \rightarrow \delta^3(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}') \quad (\text{A.74})$$

Performing the x integration in the Θ term yields

$$\exp[-i(E_p + E_{p'})t]\delta^3(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{p}') \rightarrow \exp(-2iE_p t)\delta^3(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{p}'). \quad (\text{A.75})$$

Integrating over \mathbf{p} and relabelling \mathbf{p}' as \mathbf{p} we find

$$\begin{aligned} & i \int d^3x S_F(x' - x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(+E)}(x) \\ = & \Theta(t' - t) \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \left(\frac{m_0}{E_p} \right)^{3/2} \sum_{r=1,2; r'=1,2} \omega^r(\mathbf{p}) \omega^{r\dagger}(\mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\mathbf{p}) b(p, r') \exp(i\epsilon_r p \cdot x') \\ & - \Theta(t - t') \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \left(\frac{m_0}{E_p} \right)^{3/2} \sum_{r=3,4; r'=1,2} \omega^r(-\mathbf{p}) \omega^{r\dagger}(-\mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(+\mathbf{p}) b(p, r') \\ & \times \exp(i\epsilon_r p \cdot x') \exp(-2iE_p t) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.76})$$

Now we make use of the orthogonality relation. For $r, r' = 1, 2$

$$\omega^{r\dagger}(\mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\mathbf{p}) = \omega^{r\dagger}(\epsilon_r \mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\epsilon_{r'} \mathbf{p}) = \frac{E_p}{m_0} \delta_{rr'} \quad (\text{A.77})$$

and for $r = 3, 4$ and $r' = 1, 2$,

$$\omega^{r\dagger}(-\mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\mathbf{p}) = \omega^{r\dagger}(\epsilon_r \mathbf{p}) \omega^{r'}(\epsilon_{r'} \mathbf{p}) = 0 \quad (\text{A.78})$$

The second term vanishes. The remaining term gives

$$\begin{aligned} i \int d^3x S_F(x' - x) \gamma_0 \psi^{(+E)}(x) & = \Theta(t' - t) \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_p}} \sum_{r=1}^2 b(p, r) \omega^r(\mathbf{p}) \exp(-i\epsilon_r p \cdot x') \\ & = \Theta(t' - t) \psi^{(+E)}(x') \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.79})$$

□

Similar relations can be deduced the propagation of adjoint spinors $\overline{\psi}^{(+E)}(x), \overline{\psi}^{(-E)}(x)$:

$$\Theta(t-t')\bar{\psi}^{(+E)}(x') = i \int d^3x \bar{\psi}^{(+E)}(x) \gamma_0 S_F(x'-x) \quad (\text{A.80})$$

and

$$\Theta(t'-t)\bar{\psi}^{(-E)}(x') = -i \int d^3x \bar{\psi}^{(-E)}(x) \gamma_0 S_F(x'-x) \quad (\text{A.81})$$

Proof:

Any adjoint wave packet of positive energy may be expressed in terms of normalised plane waves

$$\bar{\psi}^{(+E)}(x) = \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_p}} \sum_{r=1}^2 b^*(p, r) \bar{\omega}^r(\mathbf{p}) \exp(+ip \cdot x) \quad (\text{A.82})$$

Consider the integral

$$\begin{aligned} & i \int d^3x \bar{\psi}^{(+E)}(x) \gamma_0 S_F(x'-x) \\ = & i \int d^3x \int \frac{d^3p'}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \frac{m_0}{E_{p'}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_{p'}}} \int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^3} \sum_{r'=1}^2 \bar{\omega}^{r'}(p') \exp(ip' \cdot x) \gamma_0 \\ & \times \left\{ -i\Theta(t-t') \sum_{r=1}^2 \omega^r(p) \bar{\omega}^r(p) \exp[-ip \cdot (x-x')] \right. \\ & \left. + i\Theta(t-t') \sum_{r=3}^4 \omega^r(p) \bar{\omega}^r(p) \exp[+ip \cdot (x-x')] \right\} \quad (\text{A.83}) \end{aligned}$$

Again we do the x integration and use the orthogonality relations for spinors. We obtain

$$\int \frac{d^3p}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{E_p}} \sum_{r=1}^2 b^*(p, r) \bar{\omega}(\mathbf{p}) \exp(ip \cdot x) \Theta(t-t'). \quad (\text{A.84})$$

This is just the expansion of the adjoint spinor $\bar{\psi}^{(+E)}$ multiplied by the step function $\Theta(t-t')$.

□